TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION		PAGE	
1	INTRODUCTION	3	1
2	THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE	7	2
3	UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE	77	3
4	INSTRUMENT PANEL AND CONTROLS	147	4
5	STARTING AND OPERATING	193	5
6	WHAT TO DO IN EMERGENCIES	271	6
7	MAINTAINING YOUR VEHICLE	289	7
8	MAINTENANCE SCHEDULES	347	8
9	IF YOU NEED CONSUMER ASSISTANCE	367	9
10	INDEX	375	10

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

INTRODUCTION

1

CONTENTS

- Introduction 4
- How To Use This Manual 4
- Warnings And Cautions 5
- Vehicle Identification Number 5
- Vehicle Modifications / Alterations 6

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

INTRODUCTION

This manual has been prepared with the assistance of service and engineering specialists to acquaint you with the operation and maintenance of your new vehicle. It is supplemented by a Warranty Information Booklet and various customer oriented documents. You are urged to read these publications carefully. Following the instructions and recommendations in this manual will help assure safe and enjoyable operation of your vehicle.

NOTE: After you read the manual, it should be stored in the vehicle for convenient reference and remain with the vehicle when sold, so that the new owner will be aware of all safety warnings.

When it comes to service, remember that your dealer knows your vehicle best, has the factory-trained technicians and genuine Mopar® parts, and is interested in your satisfaction.

WARNING!

Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

Consult the table of contents to determine which section contains the information you desire.

The detailed index, at the rear of this manual, contains a complete listing of all subjects.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

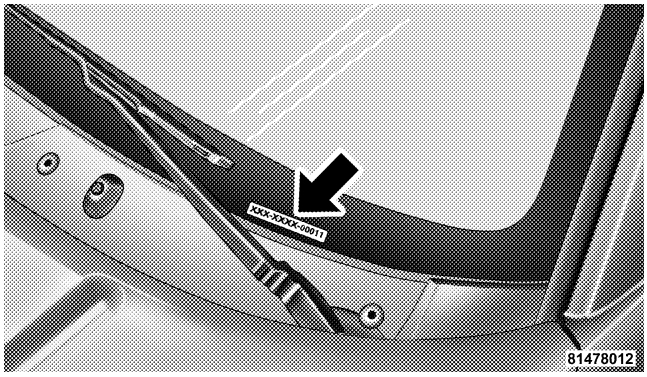
WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS

This manual contains **WARNINGS** against operating procedures which could result in an accident or bodily injury. It also contains **CAUTIONS** against procedures which could result in damage to your vehicle. If you do not read this entire manual you may miss important information. Observe all Warnings and Cautions.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is found on a stamped plate located on the left front corner of the instrument panel pad, visible from outside of the vehicle through the windshield. This number also appears on the Automobile Information Disclosure Label affixed to a window on your vehicle. Save this label for a convenient record of your vehicle identification number and optional equipment.

NOTE: It is illegal to remove the VIN plate.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

VEHICLE MODIFICATIONS / ALTERATIONS

WARNING!
Any modifications or alterations to this vehicle could seriously affect its roadworthiness and safety and may lead to an accident resulting in serious injury or death.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

THINGS TO KNOW BEFORE STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

CONTENTS

- ■ A Word About Your Keys 10
  - □ Key-In-Ignition Reminder 10
  - □ Sentry Key — If Equipped 11
- ■ Ignition And Steering Lock 13
  - □ Manual Transmissions 13
  - □ Automatic Transmissions 14
- ■ Illuminated Entry 15
  - □ Vehicles Equipped With Power Door Locks 15
- ■ Door Locks 16
  - □ Manual Door Locks 16
  - □ Power Door Locks 17
  - □ Child Protection Door Lock 20
- ■ Remote Keyless Entry 21
  - □ To Unlock The Doors 22
  - □ To Lock The Doors 22
  - □ Using The Panic Alarm 24
  - □ General Information 24
  - □ Programming Additional Transmitters 25

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- □ Battery Replacement 26
- ■ Security Alarm System — If Equipped 27
  - □ To Set The Alarm 27
  - □ To Disarm The System 28
- ■ Windows 29
  - □ Power Windows 29
  - □ Auto Down 30
  - □ Window Lockout Switch 30
  - □ Sliding Rear Window 31
  - □ Wind Buffeting 31
- ■ Occupant Restraints 31
  - □ Lap/Shoulder Belts 32
  - □ Adjustable Upper Shoulder Belt Anchorage 37
  - □ Automatic Locking Mode (If Equipped) 38
  - □ Center Lap Belts 38
  - □ Seat Belt Pretensioners 38
  - □ Enhanced Driver Seat Belt Reminder System (BeltAlert) 39
  - □ Seat Belts And Pregnant Women 40
  - □ Seat Belt Extender 40
  - □ Driver And Right Front Passenger Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)—Airbags 41
  - □ Passenger Airbag On/Off Switch – If Equipped 55
  - □ Event Data Recorder (EDR) 57
  - □ Child Restraint 59
- ■ Engine Break-In Recommendations 72

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Safety Tips 73
□ Exhaust System 73
□ Safety Checks You Should Make Inside The Vehicle 74
□ Safety Checks You Should Make Outside The Vehicle 74

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

A WORD ABOUT YOUR KEYS

The double sided keys may be inserted into the locks with either side up. The keys for your new vehicle are enclosed in a plastic bag with a bar code label affixed to the front. The bar code can be used to order duplicate keys from your dealer or a locksmith. If you received your keys without the bag, ask your dealer to give you the number.

NOTE: Integrated keys (key and key fob combined) must be cut by the dealer. The dealer must have cutters that have enough clearance for integrated keys.

Key-In-Ignition Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the key is in the ignition lock, a continuous chime will sound to remind you to remove the key.

CAUTION!

An unlocked vehicle is an invitation to thieves. Always remove the key from the ignition and lock all the doors when leaving the vehicle unattended.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

SENTRY KEY — IF EQUIPPED

With this system, an electronically coded ignition key sends a signal to the vehicle electronics. If the electronics recognizes the signal, the vehicle will start and continue to run. If the system does not recognize the signal, the vehicle will start and run for 2 seconds, then shut off. After six unsuccessful attempts at starting, the system will shut down until the correct key is used.

NOTE: If the key is in the ignition switch, then all buttons on that transmitter will be disabled. The buttons on the remaining transmitters will work. If the vehicle is moving 5 mph or more, then all the transmitter buttons are disabled for all keys.

NOTE: The Sentry Key Immobilizer System is not compatible with remote starting systems. Use of these systems may result in vehicle starting problems and a loss of security protection. Additional Sentry Keys or Mobil Speed-pass™ devices held against or immediately adjacent to the ignition key when starting the engine may cause vehicle starting problems. If a problem occurs, remove the Sentry Key from the key-ring and attempt to start the vehicle again. Pagers, cell phones, walkman, etc. will have no effect on this system.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The "Security Light" will illuminate for about 3 seconds when the ignition switch is first turned to the ON position. If the vehicle electronics do not receive a valid signal from the ignition key, the "Security Light" will flash continuously to signal that the vehicle has been immobilized. If the "Security Light" remains on during vehicle operation, it indicates a fault in the system electronics. If this option was ordered, all of the keys provided with your new vehicle have been programmed to the vehicle electronics.

Replacement Keys

NOTE: Only keys that have been programmed to the vehicle electronics can be used to start the vehicle. Once a Sentry Key has been programmed to a vehicle, it cannot be programmed to any other vehicle.

At the time of purchase, the original owner is provided with a four digit PIN number. This number is required for dealer replacement of keys. Duplication of keys may be performed at an authorized dealer or by using the Customer Key Programming procedure. This procedure consists of programming a blank key to the vehicle electronics. A blank key is one which has never been programmed and needs to be cut.

NOTE: When having the Sentry Key System serviced, bring all vehicle keys to the dealer.

Customer Key Programming

You can program new keys to the system if you have two valid keys by doing the following:

1. Insert the first valid key into the ignition and turn the ignition to the ON position for at least 3 seconds but no longer than 15 seconds. Turn the ignition back to the OFF position and remove the first key.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Insert the second valid key and switch the ignition to the ON position within 15 seconds. After 10 seconds, a chime will sound and the "Security Light" will begin to flash. Turn the ignition back to the OFF position and remove the second key.

3. Insert a blank Sentry Key into the ignition and switch the ignition to the ON position within 60 seconds of having removed the second key. After 10 seconds, a single chime will sound. The "Security Light" will stop flashing, then turn on for 3 seconds; then turn off.

The new Sentry Key has been programmed. Repeat this process to program up to a total of 8 keys.

General Information

This device complies with part 15 of FCC rules and with RS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference that may be received including interference that may cause undesired operation.

NOTE: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

IGNITION AND STEERING LOCK

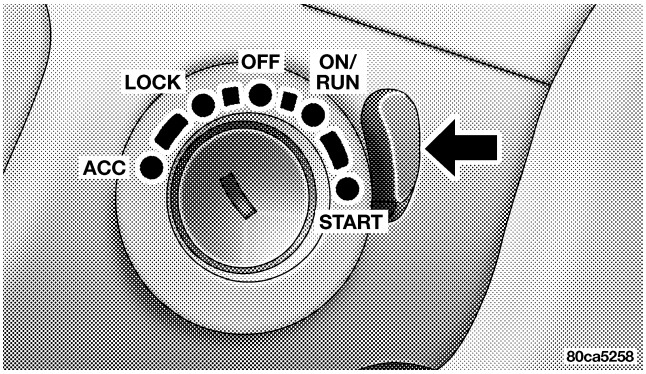
Insert the key fully, and then turn the switch to one of the five illustrated positions. The key can be inserted or withdrawn only in the LOCK position.

Manual Transmissions

When the steering wheel is in the LOCK position, the steering and ignition systems are locked to provide antitheft protection for your vehicle. It may be difficult to turn the key from the LOCK position when starting your vehicle. Move the steering wheel left and right while turning the key until it turns easily. To remove the key,

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

depress and hold the release button located between the ignition switch and the instrument panel. Turn the ignition key to LOCK and remove the key.



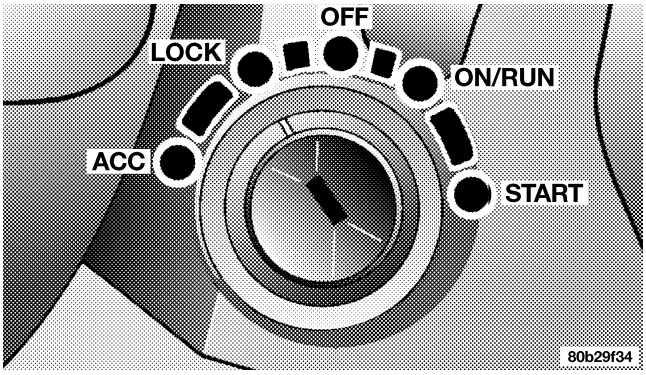
Manual Transmissions

Automatic Transmissions

In the LOCK position, the steering and ignition systems are locked to provide antitheft protection for your vehicle. It may be difficult to turn the key from the LOCK position when starting your vehicle. Move the steering wheel left and right while turning the key until it turns easily. The key can be inserted or withdrawn only in the LOCK position. Push in on the key in the ignition lock cylinder to rotate to the LOCK position.

NOTE: The steering wheel will the lock when the key is removed, and the steering wheel is turned around 115 degrees from center clockwise and around 65 degrees counterclockwise.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Automatic Transmissions

NOTE: On vehicles equipped with an automatic transmission, the key cannot be turned to LOCK until the selector is in the PARK position. Do not attempt to pull the shift lever out of PARK after the key is in the LOCK position.

ILLUMINATED ENTRY

Vehicles Equipped With Power Door Locks

All interior lights will illuminate in the vehicle when the doors are unlocked using the key fob.

The interior lights will remain on for 30 seconds after the last door is closed, or until all doors are closed and either the ignition is turned to the ON position or a key fob LOCK button is pressed.

There is also a battery saver feature that will turn the interior lights off after 8 minutes if the ignition is OFF and a door is left open or the dimmer control is in the interior lights ON position.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

DOOR LOCKS

Manual Door Locks

All the doors can be "manually" locked from the inside by pushing down the door lock plunger, located at the rear of the door. Both front doors may be opened from the inside with the door lock plunger in the down or locked position.

WARNING!

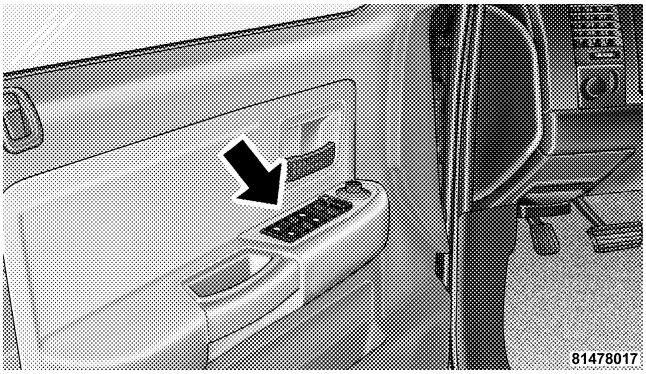
For personal security and safety in the event of an accident, lock the vehicle doors as you drive as well as when you park and leave the vehicle.

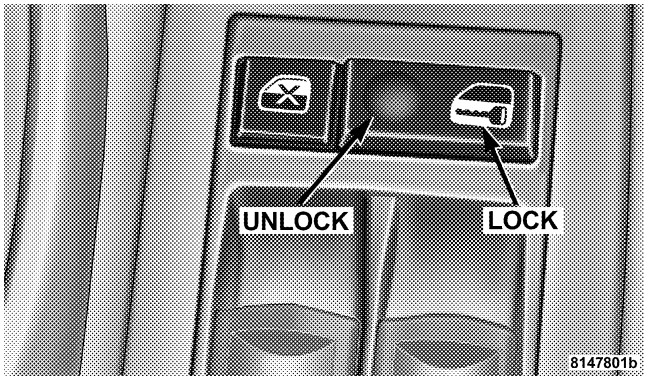
WARNING!

When leaving the vehicle always remove the key from the ignition lock, and lock your vehicle. Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. Unsupervised use of vehicle equipment may cause severe personal injuries and death.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Power Door Locks





Vehicles equipped with power door locks can be locked or unlocked from inside by either the use of the door lock switches located on the front doors or by pressing the LOCK or UNLOCK buttons on the Remote Keyless Entry key fob.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

As a safety feature the doors will not lock when using the door lock switches during the following conditions:

- The driver's door is open while the key is in the ignition.

Automatic Door Locks
If this feature is enabled, your door locks will lock automatically when the vehicle's speed exceeds 15 mph (24 km/h).

This feature is enabled when your vehicle is shipped from the assembly plant and can be disabled by using the following procedure:

1. Enter your vehicle and Close all doors.

2. Fasten your seat belt (Fastening the seat belt will cancel any chiming that may confuse you during this programming procedure).

3. Place the key into the ignition.

4. Within 10 seconds, cycle the key from the OFF position to the ON position four times; ending in the ON position (**Do not start the engine**).

5. Within 30 seconds, press the driver's door lock switch in the LOCK direction.

6. A single chime will be heard to indicate the feature has been disabled.

7. To re-activate this feature, repeat the above steps.

8. If a chime is not heard, program mode was canceled before the feature could be disabled. If necessary, repeat the above procedure.

Auto Unlock Feature
This feature unlocks all the doors of the vehicle when **any door is opened**. The following must be met:

- The Automatic Door Lock feature must be enabled.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- The doors of the vehicle must be locked automatically by the Automatic Door Lock feature.
- The vehicle is in P (Park) and the ignition switch **is in any key position**.

This feature will not operate if any of the conditions above are not met or following has occurred:

- Any manual operation of a door lock switch has occurred.

NOTE: This customer programmable feature is enabled when your vehicle is shipped from the assembly plant.

Auto Unlock Feature Programming
Customer Programming sequence to disable or enable:

1. Enter your vehicle and close all doors.

2. Fasten your seat belt (fastening the seat belt will cancel any chiming that may be confusing during this programming procedure).

3. Insert the key into the ignition.

4. Within 10 seconds, cycle the key from the OFF position to the ON position four times ending in the ON position **(do not start the engine)**.

5. Within 30 seconds, press the driver's door lock switch in the UNLOCK direction.

6. A single chime will sound to indicate the feature has been changed.

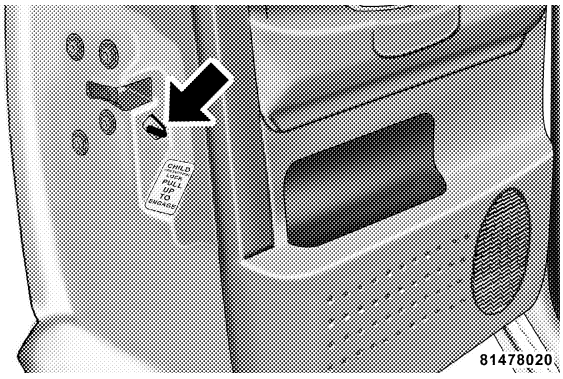
7. To reactivate the feature, repeat the above steps.

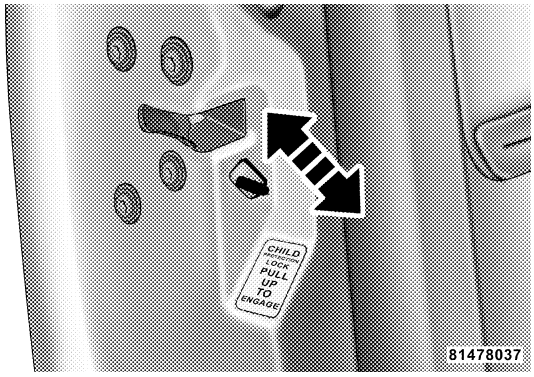
8. If a chime is not heard, program mode was canceled before the feature could be changed. If necessary repeat the above procedure.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Child Protection Door Lock

To provide a safer environment for children riding in the rear seat, the rear doors of your vehicle have the child-protection door lock system.





To use the system, open each rear door and slide the control UP to engage the locks and DOWN to disengage the child-protection locks. When the system on a door is engaged, that door can only be opened by using the outside door handle even if the inside door lock is in the unlocked position.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

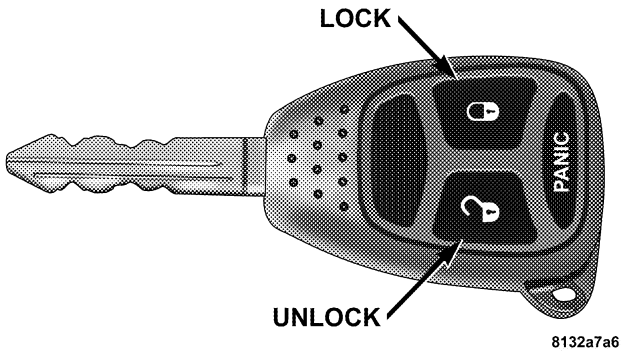
WARNING!

Avoid trapping anyone in a vehicle in a collision. Remember that the rear doors can only be opened from the outside when the child protection locks are engaged.

NOTE: After setting the child protection door lock system, always test the door from the inside to make certain it is in the desired position.

NOTE: For emergency exit with the system engaged, move the door lock switch to the UNLOCK position, roll down the window and open the door with the outside door handle.

REMOTE KEYLESS ENTRY



This system allows you to lock or unlock the doors or activate the panic alarm from distances a minimum of 66 feet (20 meters) using a hand held radio transmitter. The transmitter need not be pointed at the vehicle to activate the system.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE: The line of transmission must not be blocked with metal objects.

To unlock the doors:

Press and release the UNLOCK button on the key fob once to unlock only the driver's door or twice to unlock all the doors. When the UNLOCK button is pressed, the illuminated entry will initiate, and the parking lights will flash on twice.

The system can be programmed to unlock all the doors upon the first UNLOCK button press by using the following procedure:

1. Press and hold the LOCK button on a programmed key fob.

2. Continue to hold the LOCK button at least 4 seconds, but not longer than 10 seconds, then press and hold the UNLOCK button. A single chime will sound to indicate that this feature has changed.

3. Release both buttons at the same time.

4. Test the feature while outside of the vehicle, by pressing the LOCK/UNLOCK button on the keyfob.

NOTE: Pressing the LOCK button on the keyfob while you are inside the vehicle will activate the Security Alarm. Opening a door with the Security Alarm activated will cause the alarm to sound. Press the UNLOCK button to deactivate the Security Alarm.

5. If the desired programming was not achieved or to reactivate this feature, repeat the above steps.

To lock the doors:

Press and release the LOCK button on the key fob to lock all doors. If the ignition is OFF, when the doors are locked, the parking lights will flash on once and the horn will chirp once.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Horn Chirp Programming

The horn chirp feature will be shipped from the assembly plants activated. If desired this feature can be disabled by using the following procedure:

1. Press and hold the LOCK button on the key fob.

2. After holding the LOCK button for four seconds, also press the PANIC button within 6 seconds. A single chime will sound to indicate that this feature has changed.

3. Release both buttons at the same time.

4. To reactivate this feature, repeat the above steps.

5. Test the horn chirp feature while outside of the vehicle, by pressing the LOCK button on the key fob with the ignition in the OFF position and the key removed.

NOTE: Pressing the LOCK button on the keyfob, while you are inside the vehicle, will activate the Security Alarm. Opening a door with the Security Alarm activated will cause the alarm to sound. Press the UNLOCK button to deactivate the Security Alarm.

6. If the desired programming was not achieved or to reactivate this feature, repeat the above steps.

Flash Lamps with Lock Programming

1. Press and hold the UNLOCK button on the key fob.

2. After holding the UNLOCK button for four seconds, also press the LOCK button within 6 seconds. A single chime will sound to indicate that this feature has changed.

3. Release both buttons at the same time.

4. Test the flash lamps with LOCK feature while outside of the vehicle, by pressing the LOCK button on the key fob with the ignition in the OFF position, and the key removed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE: Pressing the LOCK button on the key fob, while you are in the vehicle, will activate the Security Alarm. Opening a door with the Security Alarm activated will cause the alarm to sound. Press the UNLOCK button to deactivate the Security Alarm.

5. If the desired programming was not achieved or to reactivate this feature, repeat the above steps.

Using the Panic Alarm

To activate the Panic mode while the ignition is OFF press and release the PANIC button on the transmitter once. When the Panic mode is activated, the interior lights will illuminate, the headlamps and parking lights will flash, and the horn will sound.

To cancel the Panic mode press and release the PANIC button on the transmitter a second time. Panic mode will automatically cancel after 3 minutes or if the vehicle is started or exceeds 15 mph (24 km/h). During the Panic Mode, the door locks and remote keyless entry systems will function normally. Panic mode will not disarm the security system on vehicles so equipped.

General Information

This device complies with part 15 of FCC rules and with RS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.

2. This device must accept any interference that may be received including interference that may cause undesired operation.

NOTE: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

If your Remote Lock Control fails to operate from a normal distance, check for these two conditions.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

1. Weak batteries in transmitter. The expected life of batteries is five years.

2. Closeness to a radio transmitter such as a radio station tower, airport transmitter, military base, and some mobile or CB radios.

Programming Additional Transmitters

Vehicles will be shipped from the assembly plants with two key fob transmitters programmed only for that vehicle. A total of eight fobs can be programmed for your vehicle. Additional fobs can be programmed to your vehicle through the use of a currently programmed fob.

NOTE: When entering program mode using that fob, all other programmed fobs will be erased and you will have to reprogram them for your vehicle.

Use the Following procedure to program additional key fobs if the vehicle is not equipped with Sentry Key:

1. Enter your vehicle and close all doors.

2. Fasten your seat belt (Fastening the seatbelt will cancel any chiming that may confuse you during this programming procedure).

3. Place the key into the ignition.

4. Turn the ignition to the ON position (**Do not start the engine**).

5. Press and hold the UNLOCK button on the key fob.

6. After holding the UNLOCK button for four seconds, also press the PANIC button within 6 seconds.

7. When a single chime is heard release both buttons. The chime is an indication that you have successfully entered program mode. All fobs that are to be programmed must be done so within 60 seconds of when the chime was heard.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

8. Using the fob to be programmed, press and release both the LOCK and UNLOCK buttons, simultaneously for 2 seconds and then release.

9. Press and release the UNLOCK button a single chime will be heard.

10. Repeat steps 8 and 9 to program up to six additional fobs.

11. Turn the ignition to the OFF position.

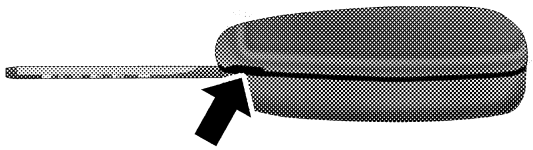
12. Your vehicle will remain in program mode up to 60 seconds from when the original chime was heard. After 60 seconds, all programmed fobs function normally.

NOTE: If you do not have a programmed transmitter, contact your dealer for details.

Battery Replacement

The recommended replacement battery is CR2032.

1. If the key fob is equipped with a screw, remove the screw. With the transmitter buttons facing down, use a flat blade to pry the two halves of the transmitter apart. Make sure not to damage the elastomer seal during removal.



81182c72

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Remove and replace the batteries. Avoid touching the new batteries with your fingers. Skin oils may cause battery deterioration. If you touch a battery, clean it with rubbing alcohol.

3. To assemble the transmitter case, snap the two halves together.

NOTE: If the key fob is equipped with a screw, reinstall and tighten the screw until snug.

SECURITY ALARM SYSTEM — IF EQUIPPED

This system monitors the vehicle doors and ignition for unauthorized operation. When the alarm is activated, the system provides both audible and visual signals. The horn will sound repeatedly for 3 minutes and the headlights and security light in the instrument cluster will flash for an additional 15 minutes. The engine will not run until the system is disarmed.

To Set the Alarm:

The alarm will set when you use the power door locks or use the Keyless Entry transmitter to lock the doors. After all the doors are locked and closed the security light in the instrument cluster will flash rapidly to signal that the system is arming. The security light in the instrument panel cluster will flash rapidly for about 15 seconds to indicate that the alarm is being set. After the alarm is set, the security light will flash at a slower rate to indicate that the system is armed.

NOTE: If the security light stays on continuously during vehicle operation, have the system checked by your dealer.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

To Disarm the System:

Use the Keyless Entry transmitter to unlock the doors. If something has triggered the system in your absence, the horn will sound three times when you unlock the doors. Check the vehicle for tampering.

The security system will also disarm, if the vehicle is started with a programmed Sentry Key. If an unprogrammed Sentry Key is used to start a vehicle, the engine will start and run for 2 seconds and then shut down. After six unsuccessful attempts at starting the engine, the system will shut down until the correct key is used. To exit alarming mode, press the RKE Unlock button or start the vehicle with a programmed Sentry Key.

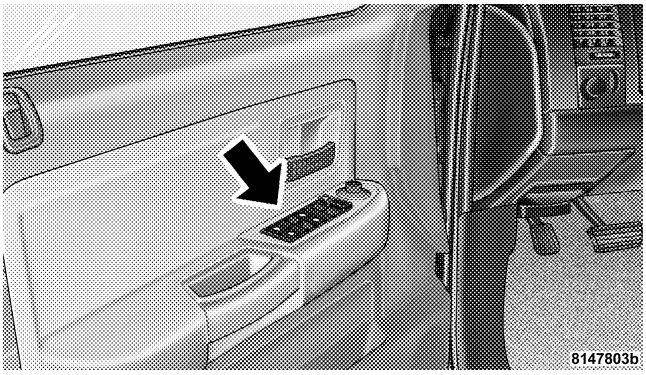
The security alarm system is designed to protect your vehicle; however, you can create conditions where the system will arm unexpectedly. If you remain in the vehicle and lock the doors with the transmitter, the alarm will sound when you pull the door handle to exit.

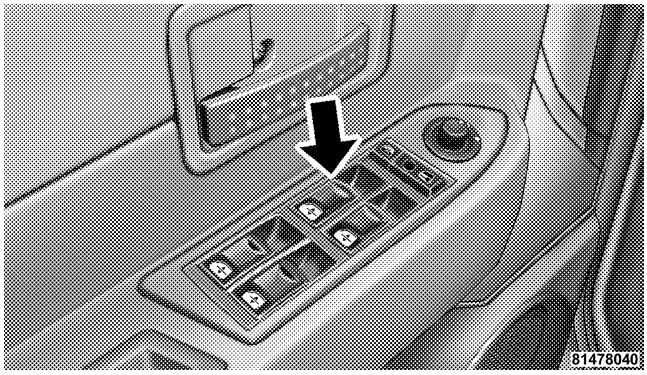
NOTE: You may accidentally activate the security system (horn sounds and lights flash) by entering the vehicle without using the key fob to unlock the door(s). The security system can be disarmed with the key fob's UNLOCK button or by inserting a programmed Sentry Key into the ignition and turning the key to the ON position.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WINDOWS

Power Windows





The control on the left front door has up-down switches that give you finger tip control of all four power windows. There is a single opening and closing switch on the passenger doors for passenger window control. The windows will operate only when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position and for ten minutes after the

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

ignition is turned OFF or the driver's door is opened. This feature can be turned off by your authorized dealer.

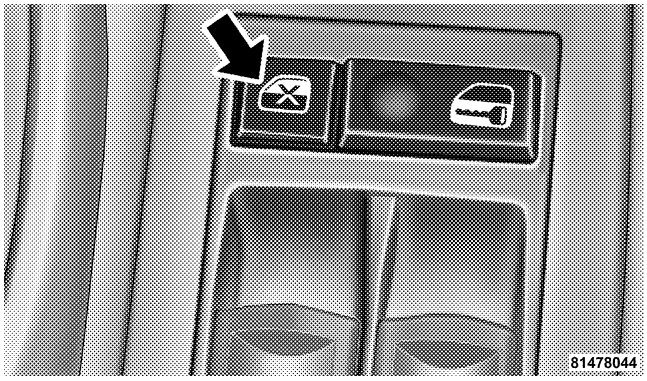
NOTE: The Power Accessory Delay feature will allow the power windows to operate for ten minutes after the ignition it turned OFF.

Auto Down

The driver's window switch has an Auto Down feature. Push the window switch past the first detent, release, and the window will go down automatically. To cancel the Auto Down movement, operate the switch in either the up or down direction and release the switch.

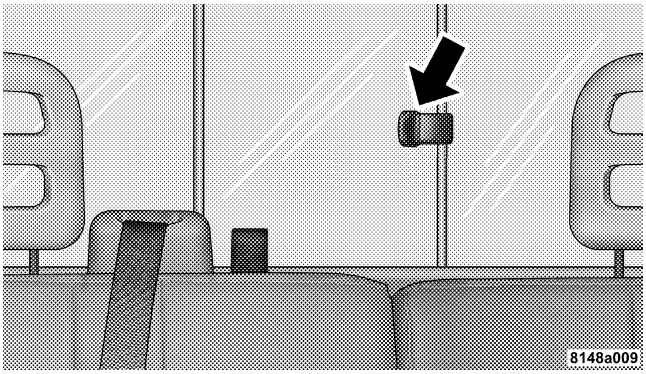
Window Lockout Switch

The window lockout switch on the driver's door allows you to disable the window control on the other doors. To disable the window controls on the other doors, press the window lock button. To enable the window controls, press the window control button again.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Sliding Rear Window



Sliding Window Light Latch

A locking device in the center of the window helps to prevent entry from the rear of the vehicle. Squeeze the lock to release the window.

WIND BUFFETING

Wind buffeting can be described as the perception of pressure on the ears or a helicopter type sound in the ears. Your vehicle may exhibit wind buffeting with the windows down or partially open.. This is a normal occurrence and can be minimized. If the buffeting occurs with the rear windows open, open the front and rear windows together to minimize the buffeting.

OCCUPANT RESTRAINTS

Some of the most important safety features in your vehicle are the restraint systems. These include the front and rear seat belts for the driver and all passengers, knee bolsters, front airbags for both the driver and front passenger, and if equipped left and right side curtain airbags for the driver and passengers seated next to a window. If you will be carrying children too small for adult-size seat belts, your seat belts or the LATCH feature (refer to the Child Restraint section in this manual), can be used to hold infant and child restraint systems.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Please pay close attention to the information in this section. It tells you how to use your restraint system properly to keep you and your passengers as safe as possible.

WARNING!

In a collision, you and your passengers can suffer much greater injuries if you are not properly buckled up. You can strike the interior of your vehicle or other passengers, or you can be thrown out of the vehicle. Always be sure you and others in your vehicle are buckled up properly.

Buckle up even though you are an excellent driver, even on short trips. Someone on the road may be a poor driver and cause a collision that includes you. This can happen far away from home or on your own street.

Research has shown that seat belts save lives, and that they can reduce the seriousness of injuries in a collision. Some of the worst injuries happen when people are thrown from the vehicle. Seat belts reduce the possibility of ejection and the risk of injury caused by striking the inside of the vehicle. **Everyone** in a motor vehicle should be belted at all times.

Lap/Shoulder Belts

All seating positions except the front center seating position (with full bench seat) have combination lap/shoulder belts. The belt webbing retractor is designed to lock during very sudden stops or collisions. This feature allows the shoulder part of the belt to move freely with you under normal conditions. But in a collision, the belt will lock and reduce the risk of your striking the inside of the vehicle or being thrown out.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.

Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts.

Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly.

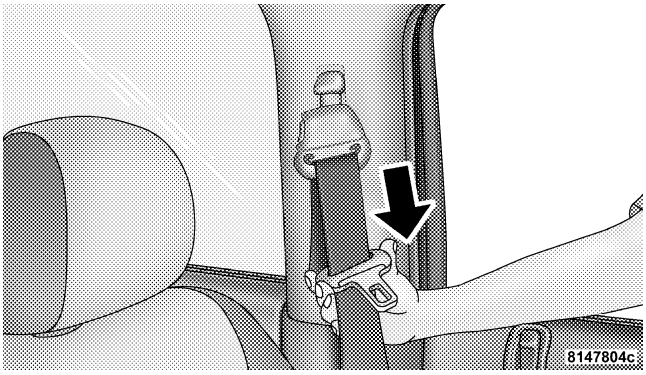
WARNING!

- **Wearing a seat belt incorrectly is dangerous. Seat belts are designed to go around the large bones of your body. These are the strongest parts of your body and can take the forces of a collision the best. Wearing your belt in the wrong place could make your injuries in a collision much worse. You might suffer internal injuries, or you could even slide out of part of the belt. Follow these instructions to wear your seat belt safely and to keep your passengers safe, too.**
- **Two people should never be belted into a single seat belt. People belted together can crash into one another in an accident, hurting one another badly. Never use a lap/shoulder belt or a lap belt for more than one person, no matter what their size.**

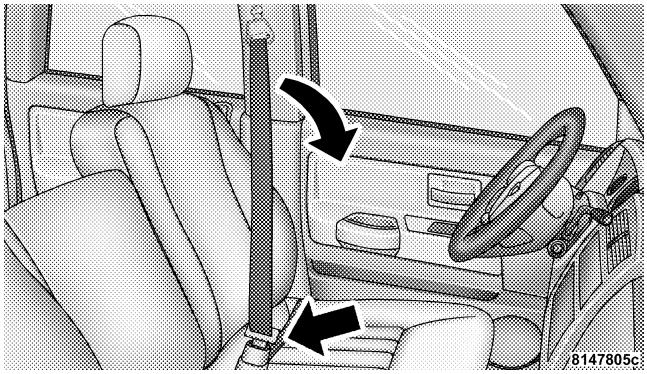
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Lap/Shoulder Belt Operating Instructions

1. Enter the vehicle and close the door. Sit back and adjust the seat.



2. The seat belt latch plate is above the back of the front seat, next to your arm in the rear seat. Grasp the latch plate and pull out the belt. Slide the latch plate up the webbing as far as necessary to allow the belt to go around your lap.



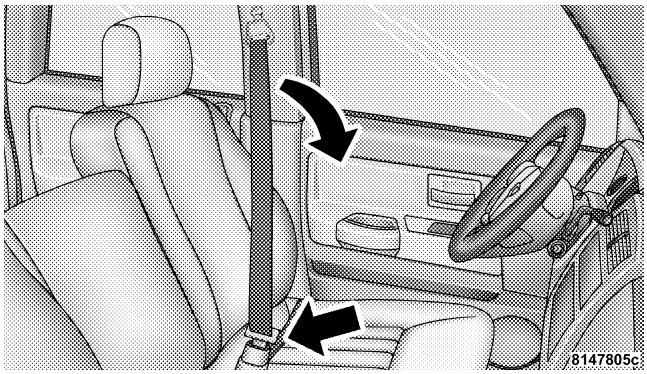
3. When the belt is long enough to fit, insert the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a “click.”

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

- **A belt buckled into the wrong buckle will not protect you properly. The lap portion could ride too high on your body, possibly causing internal injuries. Always buckle your belt into the buckle nearest you.**
- **A belt that is too loose will not protect you as well. In a sudden stop you could move too far forward, increasing the possibility of injury. Wear your seat belt snugly.**
- **A belt that is worn under your arm is very dangerous. Your body could strike the inside surfaces of the vehicle in a collision, increasing head and neck injury. And a belt worn under the arm can cause internal injuries. Ribs aren't as strong as shoulder bones. Wear the belt over your shoulder so that your strongest bones will take the force in a collision.**
- **A shoulder belt placed behind will not protect you from injury during a collision. You are more likely to hit your head in a collision if you do not wear your shoulder belt. The lap and shoulder belt are meant to be used together.**

4. Position the lap belt across your thighs, below your abdomen. To remove slack in the lap belt portion, pull up on the shoulder belt. To loosen the lap belt if it is too tight, tilt the latch plate and pull on the lap belt. A snug belt reduces the risk of sliding under the belt in a collision.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

• A lap belt worn too high can increase the risk of internal injury in a collision. The belt forces won't be at the strong hip and pelvic bones, but across your abdomen. Always wear the lap belt as low as possible and keep it snug.

• A twisted belt can't do its job as well. In a collision it could even cut into you. Be sure the belt is straight. If you can't straighten a belt in your vehicle, take it to your dealer and have it fixed.

5. Position the shoulder belt on your chest so that it is comfortable and not resting on your neck. The retractor will withdraw any slack in the belt.

6. To release the belt, push the red button on the buckle. The belt will automatically retract to its stowed position. If necessary, slide the latch plate down the webbing to allow the belt to retract fully.

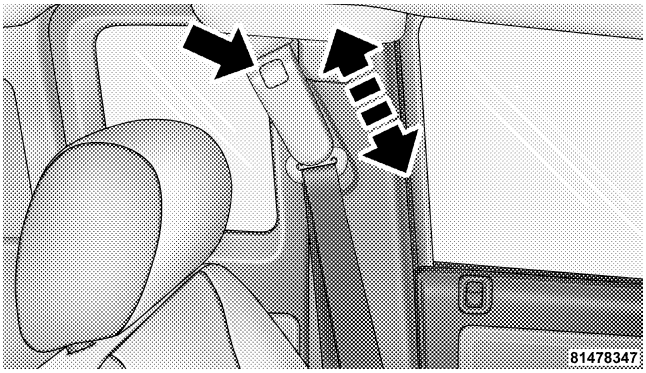
WARNING!

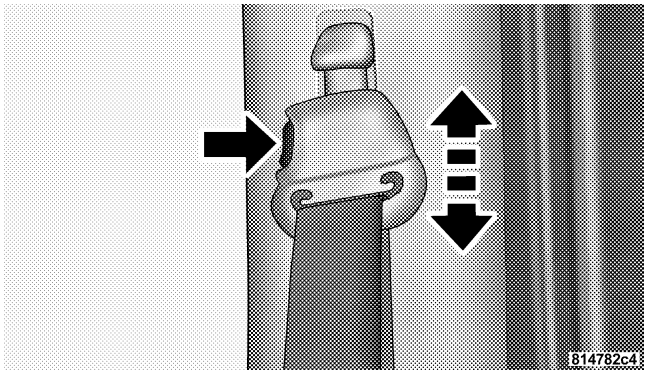
A frayed or torn belt could rip apart in a collision and leave you with no protection. Inspect the belt system periodically, checking for cuts, frays, or loose parts. Damaged parts must be replaced immediately. Do not disassemble or modify the system. Seat belt assemblies must be replaced after a collision if they have been damaged (bent retractor, torn webbing, etc.).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Adjustable Upper Shoulder Belt Anchorage

In the front row outboard seats, the shoulder belt can be adjusted upward or downward to help position the belt away from your neck. Push in on the anchorage release button to release the anchorage, and then move it up or down to the position that serves you best.





As a guide, if you are shorter than average, you will prefer a lower position, and if you are taller than average, you'll prefer a higher position. When you release the anchorage, try to move it up or down to make sure that it is locked in the desired position.

The adjuster has an easy up (EZ Up) feature, which will allow it to be moved up without engaging the button.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Automatic Locking Mode (if equipped)

To convert from the normal emergency locking mode to the automatic locking mode, grasp the shoulder belt portion and pull all of the webbing out of the retractor. Allow some of the webbing to retract into the retractor, as the belt retracts you will hear a clicking sound to indicate the seat belt is now in the automatic locking mode. Once the automatic locking mode has been activated, you will not be able pull the webbing back out of the retractor. To disengage the automatic locking mode, simply allow the seat belt to retract fully into the retractor to return the seat belt to the normal emergency locking mode.

Center Lap Belts

The center seat position on the front seat bench has a lap belt only. To fasten the lap belt, slide the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a "click." To lengthen the lap belt, tilt the latch plate and pull. To remove slack, pull the loose end of the webbing. Wear the lap belt snug against the hips. Sit back and erect in the seat, then adjust the belt as tightly as is comfortable.

Seat Belt Pretensioners

The seat belts for front outboard seating positions are equipped with pretensioning devices that are designed to remove any slack from the seat belt system in the event of a collision. These devices improve the performance of the seat belt by assuring that the belt is tight about the occupant early in a collision. Pretensioners work for all size occupants, including those in child restraints.

NOTE: These devices are not a substitute for proper seat belt placement by the occupant. The seat belt still must be worn snugly and positioned properly.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The pretensioners are triggered by the Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC). Like the airbags, the pretensioners are single use items. After a collision that is severe enough to deploy the airbags and pretensioners, both must be replaced.

Enhanced Driver Seat Belt Reminder System (BeltAlert)

If the driver's seat belt has not been buckled within 60 seconds of starting the vehicle and if the vehicle speed is greater than 5 mph (8 km/h), the Enhanced Warning System (BeltAlert) will alert the driver to buckle their seat belt. The driver should also instruct all other occupants to buckle their seat belts. Once the warning is triggered, the Enhanced Warning System (BeltAlert) will continue to chime and flash the Seat Belt Warning Light for 96 seconds or until the driver's seat belt is buckled. The Enhanced Warning System (BeltAlert) will be reactivated if the driver's seat belt is unbuckled for more than 10 seconds and the vehicle speed is greater than 5 mph (8 km/h).

The Enhanced Warning System (BeltAlert) can be enabled or disabled by your authorized dealer or by following these steps:

NOTE: The following steps must occur within the first 60 seconds of the ignition switch being turned to the ON or START position. DaimlerChrysler does not recommend deactivating the Enhanced Warning System (BeltAlert).

1. Turn the ignition switch to the OFF position and buckle the driver's seat belt.

2. Start the engine and wait for the Seat Belt Warning Light to turn off.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Within 60 seconds of starting the vehicle, unbuckle and then re-buckle the driver's seat belt at least three times within 10 seconds, ending with the seat belt buckled.

4. Turn off the engine. A single chime will sound to signify that you have successfully completed the programming.

The Enhanced Warning System (BeltAlert) can be reactivated by repeating this procedure.

NOTE: Although the Enhanced Warning System (BeltAlert) has been deactivated, the Seat Belt Warning Light will continue to illuminate while the driver's seat belt remains unbuckled.

Seat Belts and Pregnant Women

We recommend that pregnant women use seat belts throughout their pregnancies. Keeping the mother safe is the best way to keep the baby safe.

Pregnant women should wear the lap part of the belt across the thighs and as snug against the hips as possible. Keep the belt low so that it does not come across the abdomen. That way the strong bones of the hips will take the force if there is a collision.

Seat Belt Extender

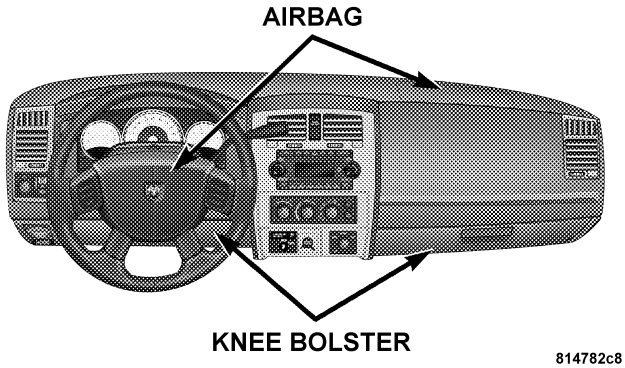
If a seat belt is too short, even when fully extended, your dealer can provide you with a seat belt extender. This extender should be used only if the existing belt is not long enough. When it is not required, remove the extender and store it.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

Using a seat belt extender when not needed can increase the risk of injury in a collision. Only use the seat belt extender when the lap belt is not long enough when it is worn low and snug, and in the recommended seating positions. Remove and store the extender when not needed.

Driver And Right Front Passenger Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)—Airbags



814782c8

This vehicle has airbags for both the driver and right front passenger as a supplement to the seat belt restraint systems. The driver's front airbag is mounted in the steering wheel. The passenger front airbag is mounted in

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

the instrument panel, above the glove compartment. The words SRS/AIRBAG are embossed on the airbag covers.

NOTE: The front airbags are certified to the Federal regulations that allow less forceful deployment.

The front airbags have a multistage inflator design. This may allow the airbag to have different rates of inflation that are based on collision severity and occupant size. Also, the front passenger airbag is certified to the Federal regulations that define Occupant Classification (Refer to "Occupant Classification System" in this section).

This vehicle may also be equipped with window bags to protect the driver, front, and rear passengers sitting next to a window. If the vehicle is equipped with window bags, they are located above the side windows. Their covers are also labeled SRS AIRBAG.

NOTE: Airbag covers may not be obvious in the interior trim; but they will open to allow airbag deployment.

WARNING!

- **Do not put anything on or around the front airbag covers or attempt to manually open them. You may damage the airbags and you could be injured because the airbags are not there to protect you. These protective covers for the airbag cushions are designed to open only when the airbags are inflating.**
- **If your vehicle is equipped with window bags, do not stack luggage or other cargo up high enough to block the location of the window bag. The area where the window bag is located should remain free from any obstructions.**
- **If your vehicle is equipped with window bags, do not have any accessory items installed which will alter the roof, including adding a sunroof to your vehicle. Do not add roof racks that require permanent attachments (bolts or screws) for installation on the vehicle roof. Do not drill into the roof of the vehicle for any reason.**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Along with the seat belts, front airbags work with the instrument panel knee bolsters to provide improved protection for the driver and front passenger. Window bags also work with seat belts to improve occupant protection.

The seat belts are designed to protect you in many types of collisions. The front airbags deploy in moderate to severe frontal collisions.

NOTE: The passenger front airbag may not deploy even when the driver front airbag has if the Occupant Classification System (refer to ″Occupant Classification System″ in this section) has determined the passenger seat is empty or is occupied by someone that is classified in the ″small child″ category.

If your vehicle is so equipped, the window bag on the crash side of the vehicle is triggered in moderate to severe side collisions. But even in collisions where the airbags work, you need the seat belts to keep you in the right position for the airbags to protect you properly.

Here are some simple steps you can follow to minimize the risk of harm from a deploying airbag.

1. Children 12 years and under should always ride buckled up in a rear seat in an appropriate child restraint.

Infants in rear-facing child restraints should **NEVER** ride in the front seat of a vehicle with a passenger front airbag. An airbag deployment can cause severe injury or death to infants in that position.

If a child from 1 to 12 years old must ride in the front passenger seat because the vehicle is crowded, move the seat as far back as possible, and use the proper child restraint. See ″Child Restraint″ in this section.

You should read the instructions provided with your child restraint to make sure that you are using it properly.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. All occupants should use their lap and shoulder belts properly.

3. The driver and front passenger seats should be moved back as far as practical to allow the airbag room to inflate.

4. If your vehicle has window bags, do not lean against the door or window, airbags will inflate forcefully into the space between you and the door.

5. If the airbag system in this vehicle needs to be modified to accommodate a disabled person, contact the Customer Center. Phone numbers are provided in the "If You Need Customer Assistance" section later in this owner's manual.

WARNING!

- **Relying on the airbags alone could lead to more severe injuries in a collision. The airbags work with your seat belt to restrain you properly. In some collisions the airbags won't deploy at all. Always wear your seat belts even though you have airbags.**
- **Being too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel during airbag deployment could cause serious injury. Airbags need room to inflate. Sit back, comfortably extending your arms to reach the steering wheel or instrument panel.**
- **If the vehicle has window bags, they also need room to inflate. Do not lean against the door or window. Sit upright in the center of the seat.**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Air Bag System Components
The airbag system consists of the following:

- Occupant Restraint Controller
- Side Remote Acceleration Sensors (If Equipped)
- Airbag Warning Light
- Driver Airbag
- Passenger Airbag
- Window Bags above Side Windows (If Equipped)
- Steering Wheel and Column
- Instrument Panel
- Interconnecting Wiring
- Knee Impact Bolsters
- Front Acceleration Sensors
- Driver and Front Passenger Seat Belt Pretensioners
- Occupant Classification System (OCS) for the Front Passenger Seat
  - Occupant Classification Module
  - Passenger Airbag Disable (PAD) Indicator Light
  - Weight Sensors

How the Airbag System Works

- The **Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC)** determines if a frontal collision is severe enough to require the airbags to inflate. The front airbag inflators are designed to provide different rates of airbag inflation from direction provided by the ORC. The ORC may also modify the rate of inflation based on the occupant size provided by the Occupant Classification Module. The ORC will not detect roll over.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The ORC also monitors the readiness of the electronic parts of the system whenever the ignition switch is in the START or RUN positions. These include all of the items listed above except the steering wheel and column, and knee bolsters. If the key is in the OFF position, in the ACC position, or not in the ignition, the airbags are not on and will not inflate.

During a moderate-to-severe rear impact the ORC may deploy the seat belt pretensioners alone.

Also, the ORC turns on the AIRBAG warning light and PAD indicator light in the instrument panel for 6 to 8 seconds for a self-check when the ignition is first turned on. After the self-check, the AIRBAG warning light will turn off. The PAD indicator light will function normally (Refer to ″Passenger Airbag Disable (PAD) Indicator Light″ in this section). If the ORC detects a malfunction in any part of the system, it turns on the AIRBAG warning light either momentarily or continuously. A single chime will sound if the light comes on again after initial start up.

WARNING!

Ignoring the AIRBAG warning light in your instrument panel could mean you won't have the airbags to protect you in a collision. If the light does not come on, stays on after you start the vehicle, or if it comes on as you drive, have the airbag system checked right away.

- The **Occupant Classification System (OCS)** is part of a Federally regulated safety system required for this vehicle. It is designed to turn off the front passenger airbag in the unlikely event that a rear-facing infant seat is in the front passenger seat.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE: Children 12 years and under should always ride buckled up in a rear seat in an appropriate child restraint.

81478330

- The **Passenger Airbag Disable (PAD) Indicator Light** (an amber light located in the center of the instrument panel) tells the driver and front passenger when the front passenger airbag is turned off.

  If the passenger frontal air bag is automatically turned off by the OCS, or by using the manual on/off switch (on vehicles so equipped), the PAD Indicator lamp iluminates the passenger frontal airbag symbol and the word ″OFF″ to show that the passenger airbag will not inflate during a collision requiring airbags.

When the right front passenger seat is empty or when very light objects are placed on the seat, the passenger air bag will not inflate even though the Passenger Airbag Disable (PAD) indicator lamp is not illuminated.

The PAD indictor light should not be illuminated when teenagers, most children in a forward facing child restraint or booster seats, most children that can properly wear the vehicle's seat belt, and when an adult passenger is properly seated in the front passenger seat. In this case, the air bag is ready to be inflated if a collision requiring an airbag occurs.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

For almost all properly installed rear facing child restraints, the PAD indicator light will be illuminated indicating that the front passenger airbag is turned off and will not inflate. If the PAD indicator light is not illuminated, DO NOT assume the air bag is turned off and move the child restraint to the second row of seats (if equipped). A deploying passenger air bag can cause death or serious injury to a child in a rear facing infant seat. For vehicles with a manual on/off switch, the passenger frontal airbag can be manually turned off. See section on how to use the switch later in this section.

NOTE: Even though this vehicle is equipped with an occupant classification system, children 12 years and under should always ride buckled up in a rear seat (if equipped) in an appropriate child restraint (see section on child restraints).

Front Passenger Seat Occupant	Passenger Airbag Disable (PAD) Indicator Light	Airbag Status
Adult	OFF	ON
Grocery Bags, Heavy Briefcases and Other Relatively Light Objects	ON	OFF
Empty or Very Small Objects	OFF*	OFF
* Since the system senses weight, some small objects will turn the PAD Indicator Light on.		

The OCS classifies an occupant using weight sensors mounted in the base of the front passenger seat. Objects hanging on the seat or other passengers pushing down on the seat will also be sensed. The weight of an adult will cause the system to turn the airbag on. In this case,

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

the OCS has classified the occupant of the seat as an adult. An adult occupant needs to sit in a normal position (with their feet on or near the floor) in order to be properly classified. Reclining the seat back too far may change how an occupant is classified by the OCS.

Drivers and adult passengers should verify that the PAD Indicator Light is not illuminated when an adult is riding in the front passenger seat. If an adult occupant's weight is transferred to another part of the vehicle (like the door or instrument panel), the weight sensors in the seat may not properly classify the occupant. Objects lodged under the seat or between the seat and the center console can prevent the occupant's weight from being measured properly and may result in the occupant being improperly classified. Ensure that the front passenger seat back does not touch anything placed behind the front passenger seat because this can also affect occupant classification.

If the front passenger seat is damaged in any way, it should only be serviced by an authorized dealer. If the seat is removed (or even if the seat attachment bolts are loosened or tightened in any way), take the vehicle to an authorized dealer.

If there is a fault present in the OCS, the Airbag Warning Light (a red light located in the center of the instrument cluster directly in front of the driver) will be turned on. This indicates that you should take the vehicle to an authorized dealer. The Airbag Warning Light is turned on whenever there is fault that can affect the operation of the airbag system. If there is a fault present in the OCS, both the PAD Indicator Light and the Airbag Warning Light are illuminated to show that the passenger airbag is turned off until the fault is cleared. If an object is lodged under the seat and interferes with operation of the weight sensors, a fault will occur which turns on both the PAD

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Indicator Light and the Airbag Warning Light. Once the lodged object is removed, the fault will be automatically cleared after a short period of time.

- The **Driver and Passenger Airbag/Inflator Units** are located in the center of the steering wheel and the right side of the instrument panel. When the ORC detects a collision requiring the airbags, it signals the inflator units. A large quantity of nontoxic gas is generated to inflate the front airbags. Different airbag inflation rates may be possible based on collision severity and occupant size. The steering wheel hub trim cover and the upper right side of the instrument panel separate and fold out of the way as the bags inflate to their full size. The bags fully inflate in about 50 - 70 milliseconds. This is about half of the time it takes to blink your eyes. The bags then quickly deflate while helping to restrain the driver and front passenger. The driver's front airbag gas is vented through vent holes in the sides of the airbag. The passenger's front airbag gas is vented through vent holes in the sides of the airbag. In this way the airbags do not interfere with your control of the vehicle.
- The **Occupant Classification Module (OCM)** is located beneath the front passenger seat. The OCM classifies the occupant into categories based on the measurements made by the seat weight sensors. The OCM communicates with the Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC). The ORC uses the occupant category to determine whether the front passenger airbag should be turned off. It also determines the rate of airbag inflation during a collision.
- The **Passenger Airbag Disabled (PAD) Indicator Light** indicates to the driver and passenger when the airbag is turned OFF. In the presence of a properly seated occupant, when the PAD indicator light is illuminated, the airbag is OFF. Also, when the Occupant Classification System detects either an empty seat

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

or a weight less than the predetermined threshold, the ORC will not illuminate the PAD indicator light even though the airbag is turned OFF.

- Your vehicle has four **Weight Sensors** located within the seat structure or between the seat tracks and cushion frame. The weight sensors measure applied weight and transfers that information to the OCM.
- The **Side Impact SRS Window Bags** are designed to activate only in certain side collisions. When the ORC (with side impact option) detects a collision requiring the window bags to inflate, it signals the inflators on the crash side of the vehicle. A quantity of nontoxic gas is generated to inflate the window bag. The inflating window bag pushes the outside edge of the headliner out of the way and covers the window. The airbag forcefully inflates in about one quarter of the time it takes to blink your eye. Make sure you are seated and belted properly and do not position items in the area where the window bag inflates. This especially applies to children. The window bag is only about 3-1/2 inches (9 cm) thick when it is inflated.
- The **Knee Impact Bolsters** help protect the knees of the driver and the front passenger, and position everyone for the best interaction with the front airbag.
- The front passenger seat assembly contains critical components that affect the front passenger airbag deployment. Correctly functioning front passenger seat components are critical for the Occupant Classification System (OCS) to properly classify the front passenger and calculate the proper airbag deployment. Do not make any modifications to the front passenger seat components, assembly, or to the seat cover. The following requirements must be strictly adhered to:
- Do not modify the front passenger seat assembly or components in any way.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Do not modify the front seat center console or center position seat in any way.
- Do not use prior or future model year seat covers not designated for the specific model being repaired. Always use the correct seat cover specified for the vehicle.
- Do not replace the seat cover with an aftermarket seat cover. Do not add a secondary seat cover other than those approved by DaimlerChrysler/Mopar.®
- At no time should any supplemental restraint system (SRS) component or SRS related component or fastener be modified or replaced with any part except those which are approved by DaimlerChrysler/Mopar®.

WARNING!

Unapproved modifications or service procedures to the front passenger seat assembly, its related components, or seat cover may inadvertently change the airbag deployment in case of a frontal crash. This could result in death or serious injury to the front seat passenger if the vehicle is involved in an accident. A modified vehicle may not comply with required Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS).

If A Deployment Occurs

The airbag system is designed to deploy the airbags when the impact sensors detect a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, to help restrain the driver and front passenger, and then immediately deflate.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE: A frontal collision that is not severe enough to need airbag protection will not activate the system. This does not mean something is wrong with the airbag system.

If you do have a collision which deploys the airbags, any or all of the following may occur:

- The nylon airbag material may sometimes cause abrasions and/or skin reddening to the driver and front passenger as the airbags deploy and unfold. The abrasions are similar to friction rope burns or those you might get sliding along a carpet or gymnasium floor. They are not caused by contact with chemicals. They are not permanent and normally heal quickly. However, if you haven't healed significantly within a few days, or if you have any blistering, see your doctor immediately. As the airbags deflate you may see some smoke-like particles. The particles are a normal by-product of the process that generates the nontoxic gas used for airbag inflation. These airborne particles may irritate the skin, eyes, nose, or throat. If you have skin or eye irritation, rinse the area with cool water. For nose or throat irritation, move to fresh air. If the irritation continues, see your doctor. If these particles settle on your clothing, follow the garment manufacturer's instructions for cleaning.
- It is not advisable to drive your vehicle after the airbags have deployed. If you are involved in another collision, the airbags will not be in place to protect you.

WARNING!

Deployed airbags and seat belt pretensioners cannot protect you in another collision. Have the airbags, seat belt pretensioners, and the front passenger seat belt retractor assembly, replaced by an authorized dealer as soon as possible. Also, have the Occupant Classification System serviced as well.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Maintaining Your Airbag System

WARNING!

- **Modifications to any part of the airbag system could cause it to fail when you need it. You could be injured if the airbag system is not there to protect you. Do not modify the components or wiring, including adding any kind of badges or stickers to the steering wheel hub trim cover or the upper right side of the instrument panel. Do not modify the front bumper, vehicle body structure, or add aftermarket side steps or running boards.**
- **Do not attempt to modify any part of your advanced airbag system. The airbag may inflate accidentally or may not function properly if modifications are made. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer for any advanced airbag system service. If your seat including your trim cover and cushion needs to be serviced in any way (including removal or loosening/tightening of seat attachment bolts), take the vehicle to your authorized dealer. Only manufacturer approved seat accessories may be used. If it is necessary to modify an advanced airbag system for persons with disabilities, contact your authorized dealer.**
- **Do not place or hang any items such as add-on video players on the right front passenger seat back. The additional weight may cause the Occupant Classification System to be unable to correctly classify the right front occupant. This could allow the passenger frontal airbag to inflate when it is not desired.**
- **You need proper knee impact protection in a collision. Do not mount or locate any aftermarket equipment on or behind the knee bolsters.**
- **It is dangerous to try to repair any part of the airbag system yourself. Be sure to tell anyone who works on your vehicle that it has an airbag system.**

Enhanced Accident Response System

If the airbags deploy after an impact and the electrical system remains functional, vehicles equipped with power door locks will unlock automatically. In addition, approximately 5 seconds after the vehicle has stopped moving, the interior lights will light until the ignition switch is turned off.

Airbag Light

You will want to have the airbags ready to inflate for your protection in an impact. While the airbag system is designed to be maintenance free, if any of the following occurs, have an authorized dealer service the system promptly:

- The airbag light does not come on or flickers during the 6 to 8 seconds when the ignition switch is first turned on.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- The light remains on or flickers after the 6 to 8 second interval.
- The light flickers or comes on and remains on while driving.

NOTE: If the speedometer, tachometer or any engine related gauges are not working, the airbag control module may also be disabled. The airbags may not be ready to inflate for your protection. Promptly check fuse block for blown fuses. Refer to the label located on the inside of the fuse block cover for the proper airbag fuses. See your dealer if the fuse is good.

Passenger Airbag On/Off Switch – If Equipped

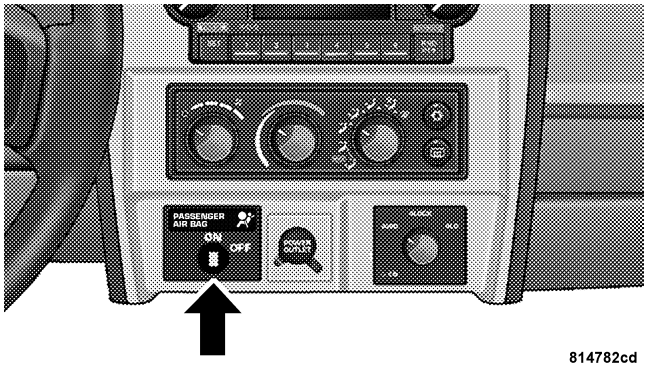
The passenger front airbag is to be turned off only if the passenger:

- is an infant (less than 1 year old) who must ride in the front seat because there is no rear seat, because the rear seat is too small for a rear-facing infant restraint or because the infant has a medical condition which makes it necessary for the driver to be able to see the infant,
- is a child, age 1 to 12 who must ride in the front seat because there is no rear seat, because there is no rear seat position available, or because the child has a medical condition which makes it necessary for the driver to be able to see the child,
- has a medical condition which makes passenger airbag inflation (deployment) a greater risk for the passenger than the risk of hitting the dashboard (instrument panel) or windshield in a crash.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

Whenever an airbag is turned off, even a lap/shoulder belted passenger may hit their head, neck, or chest on the dashboard (instrument panel) or windshield in a crash. This may result in serious injury or death.



NOTE: The Passenger Airbag On/Off Switch is not available in the Quad Cab.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

To Shut Off the Passenger Frontal Airbag

Place the ignition key in the Passenger Airbag On/Off Switch, push the key in and turn clockwise, and remove the key from the switch. This will shut off the passenger frontal airbag. The passenger frontal airbag symbol and the word "OFF" on the passenger airbag disable (PAD) lamp will illuminate when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.

To Turn On the Passenger Frontal Airbag

Place the ignition key in the Passenger Airbag On/Off Switch, push the key in and turn counterclockwise, and remove the key from the switch. This will turn On the passenger frontal airbag. The passenger airbag disable (PAD) lamp will now be Off when the ignition switch is turned to the ON position.

Event Data Recorder (EDR)

In the event of an airbag deployment, your vehicle is designed to record up to 2-seconds of specific vehicle data parameters (see list below) in an event data recorder prior to the moment of airbag deployment. Please note that such data are ONLY recorded if an airbag deploys, and are otherwise unavailable. In conjunction with other data gathered during a complete accident investigation, the electronic data may be used by DaimlerChrysler Corporation and others to learn more about the possible causes of crashes and associated injuries in order to assess and improve vehicle performance. In addition to crash investigations initiated by DaimlerChrysler Corporation, such investigations may be requested by customers, insurance carriers, government officials, and professional crash researchers, such as those associated with universities, and with hospital and insurance organizations.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

In the event that an investigation is undertaken by DaimlerChrysler Corporation (regardless of initiative), the company or its designated representative will first obtain permission of the appropriate custodial entity for the vehicle (usually the vehicle owner or lessee) before accessing the electronic data stored, unless ordered to download data by a court with legal jurisdiction (i.e., pursuant to a warrant). A copy of the data will be provided to the custodial entity upon request. General data that does not identify particular vehicles or crashes may be released for incorporation in aggregate crash databases, such as those maintained by the US government and various states. Data of a potentially sensitive nature, such as would identify a particular driver, vehicle, or crash, will be treated confidentially. Confidential data will not be disclosed by DaimlerChrysler Corporation to any third party except when:

1. Used for research purposes, such as to match data with a particular crash record in an aggregate database, provided confidentiality of personal data is thereafter preserved

2. Used in defense of litigation involving a DaimlerChrysler Corporation product

3. Requested by police under a legal warrant

4. Otherwise required by law

Data Parameters that May Be Recorded:

- Diagnostic trouble code(s) and warning lamp status for electronically-controlled safety systems, including the airbag system
- Airbag disable lamp status (if equipped)
- ″Time″ of airbag deployment (in terms of ignition cycles and vehicle mileage)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Airbag deployment level (if applicable)
- Seatbelt status
- Brake status (service and parking brakes)
- Accelerator status (including vehicle speed)
- Engine control status (including engine speed)
- Cruise control status
- Traction/stability control status

Child Restraint

Everyone in your vehicle needs to be buckled up all the time - babies and children, too. Every state in the United States and all Canadian provinces require that small children ride in proper restraint systems. This is the law, and you can be prosecuted for ignoring it. Children 12 years and under should ride properly buckled up in a rear seat, if available. According to crash statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats rather than in the front.

There are different sizes and types of restraints for children from newborn size to the child almost large enough for an adult seat belt. Always check the child seat owner's manual to ensure you have the right seat for your child. Use the restraint that is correct for your child:

Infants and Small Children

- Safety experts recommend that children ride rearward-facing in the vehicle until they are at least one year old and weigh at least 20 lbs (9 kg). Two types of child restraints can be used rearward facing: infant carriers and "convertible" child seats.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- The infant carrier is only used rearward-facing in the vehicle. It is recommended for children who weigh up to about 20 lbs (9 kg). ″Convertible″ child seats can be used either rearward-facing or forward-facing in the vehicle. Convertible child seats often have a higher weight limit in the rearward-facing direction than infant carriers do, so they can be used rearward-facing by children who weigh more than 20 lbs (9 kg) but are less than one year old. Both types of child restraints are held in the vehicle by the seatbelt or the LATCH child restraint anchorage system. (See the LATCH - Child Seat Anchorage System section.)
- Rearward-facing child seats must **NEVER** be used in the front seat of a vehicle with a front passenger airbag that does not have a switch to turn the airbag Off. An airbag deployment could cause severe injury or death to infants in this position.

Older Children and Child Restraints

- Children who weigh more than 20 lbs (9 kg) and who are older than one year can ride forward-facing in the vehicle. Forward-facing child seats and convertible child seats used in the forward-facing direction are for children who weigh 20 to 40 lbs (9 to 18 kg), and are older than one year old. These child seats are also held in the vehicle by the seatbelt or the LATCH child restraint anchorage system. (See the LATCH - Child Seat Anchorage System section.)
- The belt-positioning booster seat is for children weighing more than 40 lbs (18 kg), but who are still too small to fit the vehicle's seat belts properly. If the child cannot sit with knees bent over the seat cushion while the child's back is against the seatback, they need a belt-positioning booster seat. The child and booster seat are held in the vehicle by the lap/shoulder belt.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Children Too Large for Booster Seats

- Children who are large enough to wear the shoulder belt comfortably, and whose legs are long enough to bend over the front of the seat when their back is against the seat back should use the lap/shoulder belt in a rear seat.
- Make sure that the child is upright in the seat.
- The lap portion should be low on the hips and as snug as possible.
- Check belt fit periodically. A child's squirming or slouching can move the belt out of position.
- If the shoulder belt contacts the face or neck, move the child closer to the center of the vehicle. Never allow a child to put the shoulder belt under an arm.

For additional information, refer to www.seatcheck.org.

WARNING!

- **Improper installation can lead to failure of an infant or child restraint. It could come loose in a collision. The child could be badly injured or killed. Follow the manufacturer's directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.**
- **A rearward facing infant restraint should only be used in a rear seat of a vehicle that does not have an airbag off switch. A rearward facing infant restraint in the front seat may be struck by a deploying passenger airbag which may cause severe or fatal to the infant.**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Here are some tips for getting the most out of your child restraint:

- Before buying any restraint system, make sure that it has a label certifying that it meets all applicable Safety Standards. The manufacturer recommends that you try a child restraint in the vehicle seats where you will use it before you buy it.
- The restraint must be appropriate for your child's weight and height. Check the label on the restraint for weight and height limits.
- Carefully follow the instructions that come with the restraint. If you install the restraint improperly, it may not work when you need it.
- The Club Cab first and Club/Quad Cab second row outside seating positions have cinching latch plates. These are designed to keep the lap portion tight around the child restraint so that it is not necessary to use a locking clip. If the seat belt has a cinching latch plate, pulling up on the shoulder portion of the lap/shoulder belt will tighten the belt. The cinching latch plate will keep the belt tight, however, any seat belt system will loosen with time, so check the belt occasionally and pull it tight if necessary.
- Buckle the child into the restraint exactly as the manufacturer's instructions tell you.
- When your child restraint is not in use, secure it in the vehicle with the seat belt or remove it from the vehicle. Do not leave it loose in the vehicle. In a sudden stop or collision, it could strike the occupants or seat backs and cause serious personal injury.

LATCH - Child Seat Anchorage System (Lower Anchors and Tether for CHildren)

Each vehicle is equipped with the child restraint anchorage system called LATCH, which stands for Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren. The LATCH system

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

provides for the installation of the child restraint without using the vehicle's seat belts, instead securing the child restraint using lower anchorages and upper tether straps from the child restraint to the vehicle structure. LATCH-compatible child restraint systems are now available. However, because the lower anchorages are to be introduced over a period of years, child restraint systems having attachments for those anchorages will continue to also have features for installation using the vehicle's seat belts. Child restraints having tether straps and hooks for connection to the top tether anchorages have been available for some time. For some older child restraints, many child restraint manufacturers offer add-on tether strap kits or retro-fit kits. You are urged to take advantage of all the available attachments provided with your child restraint in any vehicle.

Club Cab

- The Club Cab front and rear right (if equipped with a rear seat) passenger seating positions have lower anchorages for LATCH equipped child restraints.

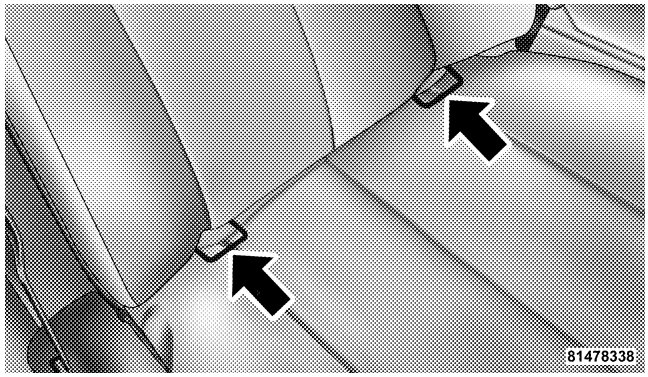
Quad Cab

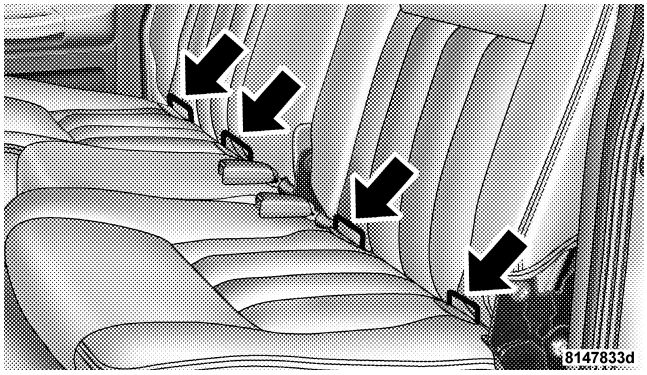
- The Quad Cab second row seat has lower anchorages that are capable of accommodating LATCH-compatible child seats having flexible, webbing-mounted lower attachments at all three seating positions. Child seats with fixed lower attachments must be installed in the outboard positions only. Regardless of the specific type of lower attachment, NEVER install LATCH compatible child seats such that two seats share a common lower anchorage. If you are installing LATCH-compatible child restraints in adjacent rear seating positions, you can use the LATCH anchors or

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

the vehicle's seat belt for the outboard position, but you must use the vehicle's seat belt at the center position.

If your child restraints are not LATCH compatible, you can only install the child restraints using the vehicle's seat belts. Please refer to the next section for typical installation instructions.





Installing the LATCH-Compatible Child Restraint System

We urge that you carefully follow the directions of the manufacturer when installing your child restraint. Not all child restraint systems will be installed as described here. Again, carefully follow the installation instructions that were provided with the child restraint system. The rear seat lower anchorages are round bars, located at the rear

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

of the seat cushion where it meets the seat back, and are just visible when you lean into the vehicle to install the child restraint. You will easily feel them if you run your finger along the intersection of the seatback and seat cushion surfaces. In addition, there are tether strap anchorages each LATCH seating position (see section on Child Restraint Tether Anchor). Many, but not all restraint systems will be equipped with separate straps on each side, with each having a hook or connector for attachment to the lower anchorage and a means of adjusting the tension in the strap. Forward-facing toddler restraints and some rear-facing infant restraints will also be equipped with a tether strap, a hook for attachment to the tether strap anchorage and a means of adjusting the tension of the strap. You will first loosen the adjusters on the lower straps and on the tether strap so that you can more easily attach the hooks or connectors to the vehicle anchorages. Next attach the lower hooks or connectors over the top of the anchorage bars, pushing aside the seat cover material. Then attach the tether strap to the anchorage located on the back of the seat, being careful to route the tether strap to provide the most direct path between the anchor and the child restraint. If your vehicle is equipped with adjustable rear head restraints, raise the head restraint and, route the tether strap under the head restraint and between the two posts. Finally, tighten all three straps as you push the child restraint rearward and downward into the seat, removing slack in the straps according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

WARNING!

Improper installation of a child restraint to the LATCH anchorages can lead to failure of an infant or child restraint. The child could be badly injured or killed. Follow the manufacturer's directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Installing Child Restraints Using the Vehicle Seat Belt

The passenger seat belts are equipped with either cinching latch plates or automatic locking retractors, which are designed to keep the lap portion tight around the child restraint so that it should not be necessary to use a locking clip. If the seat belt has a cinching latch plate, pulling up on the shoulder portion of the lap/shoulder belt will tighten the belt. The cinching latch plate will keep the belt tight; however, any seat belt system will loosen with time, so check the belt occasionally and pull it tight if necessary. If the seat belt has an automatic locking retractor, it will have a distinctive label. Pull the belt from the retractor until there is enough to allow you to pass through the child restraint and slide the latch plate into the buckle. Then, pull the belt until it is all extracted from the retractor. Allow the belt to return to the retractor, pulling on the excess webbing to tighten the lap portion about the child restraint. For automatic locking retractor seat belts, refer to ″Automatic Locking Mode″ earlier in this section. If you have trouble tightening the lap/shoulder belt on the child restraint because the buckle or latch plate is too close to the belt path opening on the restraint, follow these steps. If the buckle is webbing mounted, disconnect the latch plate from the buckle and twist the short buckle-end belt to shorten it. Insert the latch plate into the buckle with the release button facing out. If the belt still can't be tightened, the buckle is not webbing mounted, or if by pulling and pushing on the restraint loosens the belt, you may need to do something more. Disconnect the latch plate from the buckle, turn the latch plate around, and insert the latch plate into the buckle again. If you still can't make the child restraint secure, try a different seating position or use the locking clip provided with your child restraint. See the section ″Child Restraint Tether Anchor″ to complete the child seat installation.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Child Restraint Tether Anchor

The Club Cab model has two routing straps located behind each of the rear outboard seating positions. The tether anchor itself is located in the center of vehicle, in between the two seating positions. The front outboard passenger seating position is also equipped with a child tether anchorage, located at the base of the front seat back. When there is a rear seat delete option, the tether anchorage located on the cab back panel is designed to be used for the front seat center seating position. The Quad cab model has three anchorages located behind each of the rear seating positions (rear left, rear center, and rear right).

WARNING!

With a child restraint installed in the rear driver or passenger side locations, use care when adjusting the front seat(s) rearward, to avoid the front seat back coming in contact with the belted child directly behind the seat. The child could be injured.

WARNING!

Improper installation can lead to failure of an infant or child restraint. It could come loose in a collision. The child could be seriously injured or killed. Make sure the child restraint tether strap is always routed through the proper anchor strap inner loop.

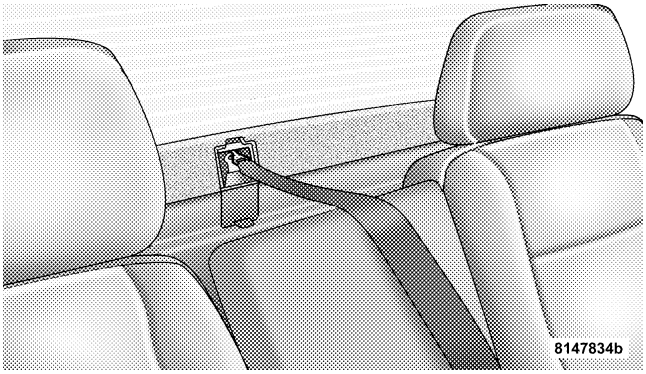
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

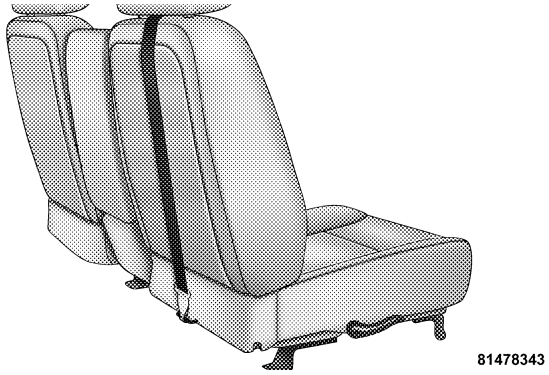
Tether Strap at the Front Passenger Seat (Club Cab)

1. Route the child restraint tether strap up and over the front passenger seat back and under the head restraint.

2. Connect the tether strap to the lower anchor.

3. Remove the slack in the tether strap so that it is pulled tight.





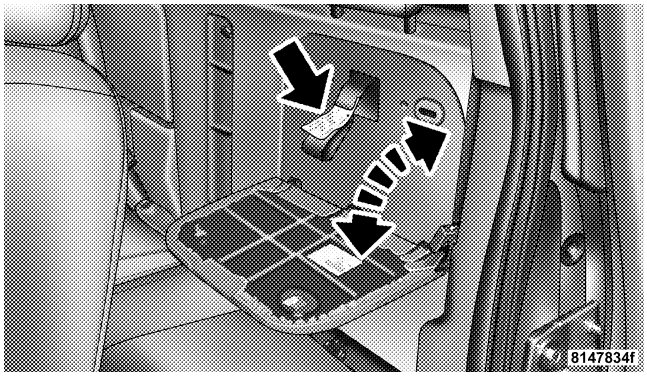
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tether Straps at the Rear Passenger Seat (Club Cab)

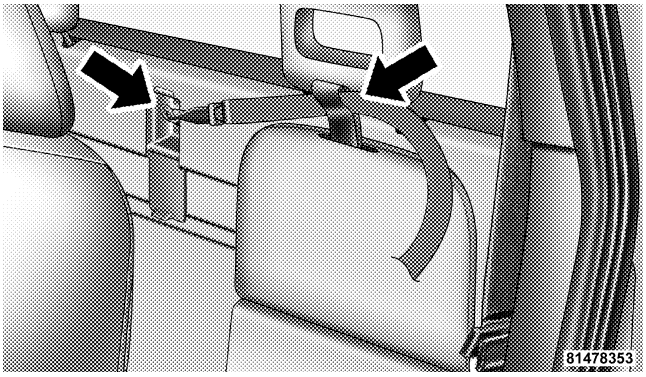
1. Route the child restraint tether strap through the routing loop, located directly behind the child restraint. The routing loops are located behind the flip-down door on the cab back panel (padded bolster).

2. Route the tether strap across to the center tether anchorage. The center tether is located behind the slide door in the center of the vehicle, between the two seating positions.

3. Remove the slack in the tether strap so that the anchor strap is pulled tight.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Tether Straps at the Rear Passenger Seat (Quad Cab)

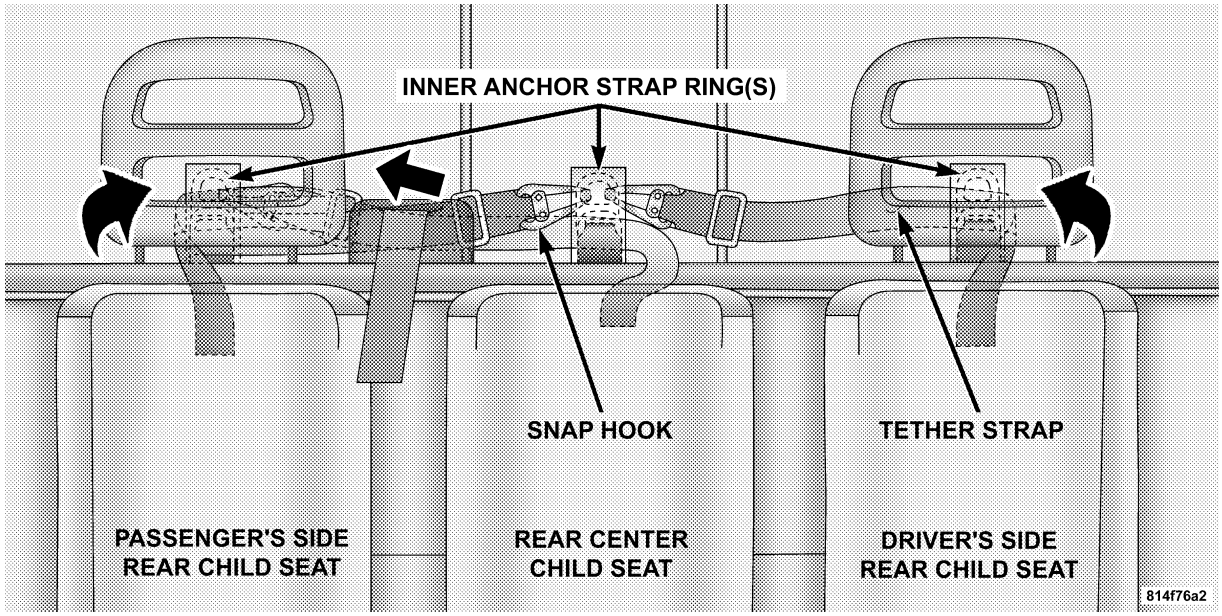
1. Route the child restraint tether strap under the head restraint for the outboard seating positions, and then through the anchor strap outer loop (webbing material loop), located directly behind the child restraint.

2. Route the tether strap across to the nearest installed anchor strap, and attach the tether strap hook to the anchor strap inner metal ring.

3. Remove the slack in the tether strap so that both anchor straps are pulled tight.

NOTE: Two Anchors must be used for any of the three seating positions.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Multiple Child Restraint Quad Cab

Information Provided by:
DEALER
E-PROCESS

WARNING!

An incorrectly anchored tether strap could lead to seat failure and injury to the child. In a collision, the seat could come loose and allow the child to crash into the inside of the vehicle or other passengers, or even be thrown from the vehicle. Use only the anchor positions directly behind the child restraint to secure a child restraint top tether strap. See your dealer for help if necessary.

Transporting Pets

Airbags deploying in the front seat could harm your pet. An unrestrained pet will be thrown about and possibly injured, or injure a passenger during panic braking or in a collision. Pets should be restrained in the rear seat in pet harnesses or pet carriers that are secured by seat belts.

ENGINE BREAK-IN RECOMMENDATIONS

A long break-in period is not required for the engine in your new vehicle. Drive moderately during the first 300 miles (500 km). After the initial 60 miles (100 km), speeds up to 50 or 55 mph (80 or 90 km/h) are desirable. While cruising, brief full-throttle acceleration, within the limits of local traffic laws, contributes to a good break-in.

Avoid wide open throttle acceleration in low gear.

The engine oil installed in the engine at the factory is a high-quality, energy-conserving type lubricant. Oil changes should be consistent with anticipated climate conditions under which vehicle operations will occur. The recommended viscosity and quality grades are shown in Section 7.

NON-DETERGENT OR STRAIGHT MINERAL OILS MUST NEVER BE USED.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

A new engine may consume some oil during its first few thousand miles of operation. This is a normal part of the break-in and is not an indication of difficulty.

SAFETY TIPS

Exhaust System

WARNING!

Exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an extremely toxic gas that by itself is colorless and odorless. To avoid inhaling these gases, the following precautions should be observed:

- Do not run the engine in a closed garage or in confined areas any longer than needed to move your vehicle in or out of the area.
- It may be necessary to sit in a parked vehicle with the engine running for more than a short period. If so, adjust your climate control system to force outside air into the vehicle. Set the blower at high speed and the controls in any position except OFF or RECIRC.
- The best protection against carbon monoxide entry into the vehicle body is a properly maintained engine exhaust system.

Be aware of changes in the sound of the exhaust system; exhaust fumes detected inside the vehicle; or damage to the underside or rear of the vehicle. Have a competent mechanic inspect the complete exhaust system and adjacent body areas for broken, damaged, deteriorated or mispositioned parts. Open seams or loose connections could permit exhaust fumes to seep into the passenger compartment. In addition, inspect the exhaust system each time the vehicle is raised for lubrication or oil change. Replace or adjust as required.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Safety Checks You Should Make Inside The Vehicle

Seat Belts

Inspect the belt system periodically, checking for cuts, frays and loose parts. Damaged parts must be replaced immediately. Do not disassemble or modify the system.

Seat belt assemblies must be replaced after an accident if they have been damaged (bent retractor, torn webbing, etc.). If there is any question regarding belt or retractor condition, replace the belt.

Defrosters

Check operation by selecting the defrost mode and place the blower control on high speed. You can feel the air directed against the windshield.

Safety Checks You Should Make Outside The Vehicle:

Tires

Examine tires for tread wear or uneven wear patterns. Check for stones, nails, glass or other objects lodged in the tread.

Inspect for tread cuts or sidewall cracks. Check wheel nuts for tightness and tires for proper pressure.

Lights

Have someone observe the operation of exterior lights as you turn them on. Check turn signal and high beam indicator lights on the instrument panel.

Door Latches

Check for positive closing, latching and locking.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fluid Leaks

Check the area under vehicle after overnight parking for fuel, water, oil, or other fluid leaks. Also, if gasoline fumes are detected, the cause should be located and corrected.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

UNDERSTANDING THE FEATURES OF YOUR VEHICLE

CONTENTS

■ Mirrors 81
- □ Inside Day/Night Mirror 81
- □ Automatic Dimming Mirror — If Equipped 82
- □ Outside Mirrors 82
- □ Exterior Mirrors Folding Feature — If Equipped 82
- □ Electric Remote-Control Mirrors 83
- □ Heated Mirrors — If Equipped 84

■ Hands–Free Communication (UConnect™) — If Equipped 84
- □ Operation 86
- □ Phone Call Features 92
- □ UConnect™ System Features 95
- □ Advanced Phone Connectivity 99
- □ Things You Should Know About Your UConnect™ System 101

■ Seats 107
- □ Manual Seat Adjustment 107
- □ Front Seats Manual Seat Recliners 108

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- □ Manual Lumbar Support Adjustment — If Equipped 109
- □ Adjustable Head Restraints — Front Seating Positions 109
- □ 6 - Way Power Seat Adjuster — Driver's Side Only 110
- □ Club Cab/Quad Cab Rear Seat 112
- □ Heated Seats — If Equipped 112

■ To Open And Close The Hood 112

■ Lights 114

- □ Interior Lights 114
- □ Battery Saver 115
- □ Headlamp Delay 116
- □ Headlights, Parking Lights, Panel Lights 116
- □ Daytime Running Lights (Canada Only) 117
- □ Lights-On Reminder 117
- □ Fog Lights — If Equipped 117
- □ Cargo Light — If Equipped 118

■ Multifunction Control Lever 118

- □ Turn Signals 118
- □ Passing Light 119
- □ High Beam / Low Beam Select Switch 119
- □ Windshield Wipers 120
- □ Windshield Washers 121

■ Tilt Steering Column 122

■ Electronic Speed Control — If Equipped 123

- □ To Activate 123

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- To Set At A Desired Speed 123
- To Deactivate 123
- To Resume Speed 124
- To Vary The Speed Setting 124
- To Accelerate For Passing 125

■ Overhead Console 126
- Courtesy/Reading Lights 127

■ Compass/Temperature Mini-Trip Computer 127
- US/M Button 127
- Reset Button 128
- Global Reset 128
- Step Button 129
- Average Fuel Economy (AVG ECO) 129
- Distance To Empty (DTE) 129
- Trip Odometer (ODO) 130
- Elapsed Time (ET) 130
- C/T Button 130
- Compass/Temperature Display 131
- Automatic Compass Calibration 131
- Manual Compass Calibration 131
- To Put Into a Calibration Mode 132
- Outside Temperature 133

■ Garage Door Opener — If Equipped 133
- Programming Homelink 134
- Canadian Programming/Gate Programming . .137
- Using Homelink 138

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

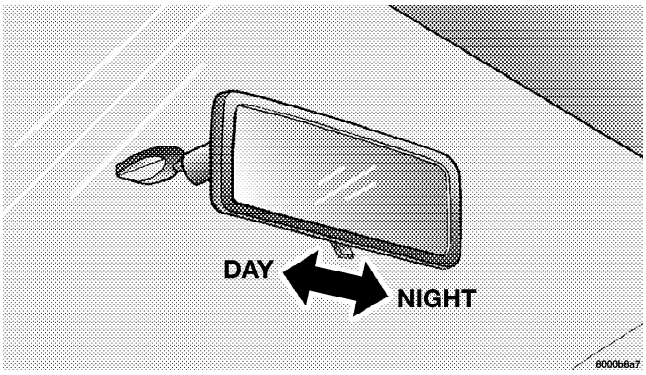
- □ Erasing Homelink Buttons 138
- □ Reprogramming a Single Homelink Button . . .138
- □ Security 139
- ■ Electrical Power Outlets 139
- □ Electrical Outlet Use With Engine Off (Battery Fed Configuration) 140
- ■ Floor Console — If Equipped 141
- □ Floor Console Features 141
- ■ Center Storage Compartment — If Equipped . . .142
- ■ Cup Holders 143
- ■ Tailgate 143
- ■ Slide-In Campers 144
- □ Camper Applications 144
- □ General Information 145
- □ Carbon Monoxide Warning Vehicles Equipped With A Cap Or Slide-In Campers 145

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

MIRRORS

Inside Day/Night Mirror

The mirror should be adjusted to center on the view through the rear window. A two-point pivot system allows for horizontal and vertical adjustment of the mirror.

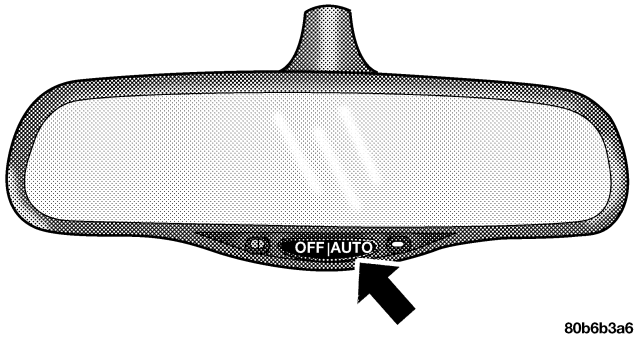


Annoying headlight glare can be reduced by moving the small control under the mirror to the night position (toward rear of truck). The mirror should be adjusted while set in the day position (toward windshield).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Automatic Dimming Mirror — If Equipped

This mirror will automatically adjust for annoying headlight glare from vehicles behind you. You can turn the feature on or off by pressing the button at the base of the mirror. A light in the button will indicate when the dimming feature is activated.



80b6b3a6

CAUTION!

To avoid damage to the mirror during cleaning, never spray any cleaning solution directly onto the mirror. Apply the solution onto a clean cloth and wipe the mirror clean.

Outside Mirrors

To receive maximum benefit, adjust the outside mirror(s) to center on the adjacent lane of traffic with a slight overlap of the view obtained on the inside mirror.

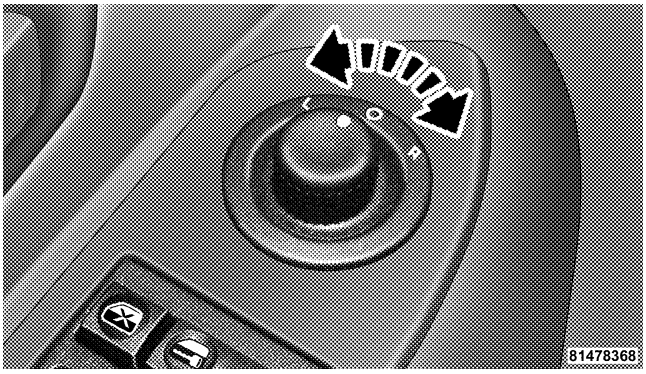
Exterior Mirrors Folding Feature — If Equipped

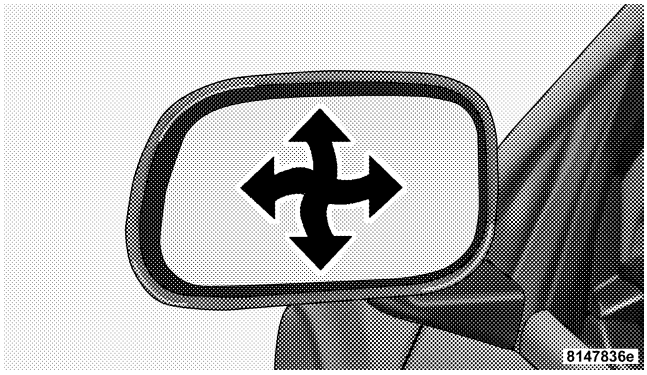
Folding exterior mirrors are hinged and may be moved either forward or rearward to resist damage.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Electric Remote-Control Mirrors

The controls for the power mirrors are located on the driver's door trim panel.





To adjust a mirror, turn the control wand toward the left or right mirror positions indicated. Tilt the control wand in the direction you want the mirror to move. When finished adjusting the mirror, turn the control to the center position to prevent accidentally moving a mirror.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

Vehicles and other objects seen in the right side convex mirror will look smaller and farther away than they really are. Relying too much on your right side mirror could cause you to collide with another vehicle or other object. Use your inside mirror when judging the size or distance of a vehicle seen in the right side mirror.

Heated Mirrors — If Equipped

Heated mirrors are automatically activated when you depress the rear window defroster switch located on the instrument panel. The light will illuminate to indicate that the heating elements are ON. Turning OFF the ignition will deactivate the heated mirrors.

HANDS–FREE COMMUNICATION (UConnect™) — IF EQUIPPED

UConnect™ is a voice-activated, hands-free, in vehicle communications system. UConnect™ allows you to dial a phone number with your cellular phone* using simple voice commands (e.g., ″Call ... Mike ...Work″ or ″Dial ... 248-555-1212″). Your cellular phone's audio is transmitted through your vehicle's audio system; the system will automatically mute your radio when using the UConnect™ system.

NOTE: The UConnect™ system use requires a cellular phone equipped with the Bluetooth ″Hands-Free Profile,″ version 0.96 or higher.

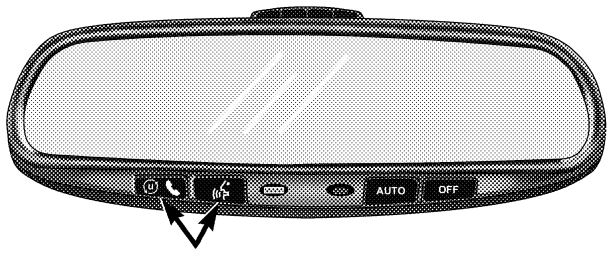
For UConnect Customer Support call 1-877-855-8400 or visit the UConnect website (www.chrysler.com/uconnect).

UConnect™ allows you to transfer calls between the system and your cellular phone as you enter or exit your vehicle, and enables you to mute the system's microphone for private conversation.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

The UConnect™ phonebook enables you to store up to 32 names and four numbers per name. Each language has a separate 32 name phonebook accessible only in that language. This system is driven through your Bluetooth™ Hands-Free profile cellular phone. UConnect™ features Bluetooth™ technology - the global standard that enables different electronic devices to connect to each other without wires or a docking station, so UConnect works no matter where you stow your cellular phone (be it your purse, pocket, or briefcase), as long as your phone is turned on and has been paired to the vehicle's UConnect™ system. The UConnect™ system allows up to seven cellular phones to be linked to system. Only one linked (or paired) cellular phone can be used with the system at a time. The system is available in English, Spanish, or French languages (as equipped).

The rearview mirror contains the microphone for the system and the control buttons that will enable you to access the system. The diagram below shows the mirror with the appropriate buttons. Individual button behavior is discussed in the "Operation" section.



8105b20d

UConnect™ Switches

The UConnect™ system can be used with any Hands-Free Profile certified Bluetooth™ cellular phone. If your cellular phone supports a different profile (eg., Headset

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Profile), you may not be able to use any UConnect™ features. Refer to your cellular service provider or the phone manufacturer for details.

The UConnect™ system is fully integrated with the vehicle's audio system. The volume of the UConnect™ system can either be adjusted from the radio volume control knob, or from the steering wheel radio control (right switch), if so equipped.

The radio display will be used for visual prompts from the UConnect™ system such as "CELL" or caller ID on certain radios.

Operation

Voice commands can be used to operate the UConnect™ system and to navigate through the UConnect™ menu structure. Voice commands are required after most UConnect™ system prompts. You will be prompted for a specific command and then guided through the available options.

- Prior to giving a voice command, one must wait for the voice on beep, which follows the "Ready" prompt or another prompt.
- For certain operations, compound commands can be used. For example, instead of saying "Setup" and then "Phone Pairing," the following compound command can be said: "Setup Phone Pairing."
- For each of the feature explanation in this section, only the combined form of the voice command is given. You can also break the commands into parts and say each part of the command, when you are asked for it. For example, you can either use the combined form voice command "Phonebook New Entry," or you can break the combined form command into two voice commands: "Phonebook" and "New Entry." Please remember, the UConnect™ system works best when you talk in a normal conversational tone, as if speaking to some one sitting eight feet away from you.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Voice Command Tree
Refer to "Voice Tree" at the end of this section.

Help Command
If you need assistance at any prompt or if you want to know what your options are at any prompt, say "Help" following the voice on beep. The UConnect™ system will play all the options at any prompt if you ask for help.

To activate the UConnect™ system from idle, simply press the 'Phone' button and follow audible prompts for directions. All UConnect™ system sessions begin with a press of the 'Phone' button on the mirror.

Cancel Command
At any prompt, after the voice on beep, you can say "Cancel" and you will be returned to the main menu. However, in a few instances the system will take you back to the previous menu.

Pair (Link) UConnect™ System to a Cellular Phone
To begin using your UConnect™ system, you must pair your compatible Bluetooth™ enabled cellular phone (refer to "Introduction" section to learn about the phone type). To complete the pairing process, you will need to reference your cellular phone owner's manual. One of the following vehicle specific websites may also provide detailed instructions for pairing with the brand of phone that you have:

NOTE:
- www.chrysler.com/uconnect
- www.dodge.com/uconnect
- www.jeep.com/uconnect

The following are general phone to UConnect™ System pairing instructions:

- Press the 'Phone' button to begin.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Setup Phone Pairing."
- When prompted, after the voice on beep, say "Pair a Phone."
- You will be asked to say a four-digit pin number which you will later need to enter into your cellular. You can enter any four-digit pin number. You will not need to remember this pin number after the initial pairing process.
- The UConnect™ system will then prompt you to begin the cellular phone pairing process on your cellular phone. Before attempting to pair phone, please see your cellular phone's user manual (Bluetooth section) for instructions on how to complete this step.
- For identification purposes, you will be prompted to give the UConnect™ system a name for your cellular phone. Each cellular phone that is paired should be given a unique phone name.
- You will then be asked to give your cellular phone a priority level between 1 and 7, 1 being the highest priority. You can pair up to seven cellular phones to your UConnect™ system. However, at any given time, only one cellular phone can be in use, connected to your UConnect™ System. The priority allows the UConnect™ system to know which cellular phone to use if multiple cellular phones are in the vehicle at the same time. For example, if priority 3 and priority 5 phones are present in the vehicle, the UConnect™ system will use the priority 3 cellular phone when you make a call. You can select to use a lower priority cellular phone at any time (refer to "Advanced Phone Connectivity" section).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Dial by Saying a Number

- Press the 'Phone' button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Dial."
- System will prompt you to say the number you want call.
- For example, you can say "234-567-8901." The phone number that you enter must be of valid length and combination. The UConnect™ limits the user from dialing invalid combination of numbers. For example, 234-567-890 is nine digits long, which is not a valid phone number - the closest valid phone number has ten digits.
- The UConnect™ system will confirm the phone number and then dial. The number will appear in the display of certain radios.

Call by Saying a Name

- Press the "Phone" button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Call."
- System will prompt you to say the name of the person you want call.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say the name of the person you want to call. For example, you can say "John Doe," where John Doe is a previously stored name entry in the UConnect™ phonebook. Refer to section "Add Names to Your UConnect™ Phonebook," to learn how to store a name in the phonebook.
- The UConnect™ system will confirm the name and then dial the corresponding phone number, which may appear in the display of certain radios.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Add Names to Your UConnect™ Phonebook

NOTE: Adding names to phonebook is recommended when vehicle is not in motion.

- Press the "Phone" button to begin.
- After the ″Ready″ prompt and the following beep, say ″Phonebook New Entry.″
- When prompted, say the name of the new entry. Use of long names helps the voice recognition and is recommended. For example, say ″Robert Smith″ or ″Robert″ instead of ″Bob.″
- When prompted, enter the number designation (e.g.: ″Home,″ ″Work,″ ″Mobile,″ or ″Pager″). This will allow you to store multiple numbers for each phonebook entry, if desired.
- When prompted, recite the phone number for the phonebook entry that you are adding.

After you are finished adding an entry into the phonebook, you will be given the opportunity to add more phone numbers to the current entry or to return to the main menu.

The UConnect™ system will allow you to enter up to 32 names in the phonebook with each name having up to four associated phone numbers and designations. Each language has a separate 32 name phonebook accessible only in that language.

Edit Entries in the UConnect™ Phonebook

NOTE: Adding names to phonebook is recommended when vehicle is not in motion.

- Press the 'Phone' button to begin.
- After the ″Ready″ prompt and the following beep, say ″Phonebook Edit.″

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- You will then be asked for the name of the phonebook entry that you wish to edit.
- Next, choose the number designation (home, work, mobile, or pager) that you wish to edit.
- When prompted, recite the new phone number for the phonebook entry that you are editing.

After you are finished editing an entry in the phonebook, you will be given the opportunities to edit another entry in the phonebook, call the number you just edited, or return to the main menu.

"Phonebook Edit" can be used to add another phone number to a name entry that already exists in the phonebook. For example, the entry John Doe may have a mobile and a home number, but you can add John Doe's work number later using the "Phonebook Edit" feature.

Delete Entries in the UConnect™ Phonebook

- Press the 'Phone' button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Phonebook Delete."
- After you enter the Phonebook Delete menu, you will then be asked for the name of the entry that you wish to delete. You can either say the name of a phonebook entry that you wish to delete or you can say "List Names" to hear a list of the entries in the phonebook from which you choose. To select one of the entries from the list, press the "Voice Recognition" button while the UConnect™ system is playing the desired entry and say "Delete."
- After you enter the name, the UConnect™ system will ask you which designation you wish to delete: home, work, mobile or pager. Say the designation you wish to delete.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

After confirmation, the phonebook entries will be deleted. Note that only the phonebook in the current language is deleted.

Delete All Entries in the UConnect™ Phonebook

- Press the 'Phone' button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Phonebook Erase All."
- The UConnect™ system will ask you to verify that you wish to delete all the entries from the phonebook.
- After confirmation, the phonebook entries will be deleted.

List All Names in the UConnect™ Phonebook

- Press the 'Phone' button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Phonebook List Names."
- The UConnect™ system will play the names of all the phonebook entries.
- To call one of the names in the list, press the "Voice Recognition' button during the playing of the desired name and say "Call". NOTE: the user can also exercise "Edit" or "Delete" operations at this point.
- The UConnect™ system will then prompt you as to number designation you wish to call.
- The selected number will be dialed.

Phone Call Features

The following features can be accessed through the UConnect™ system if the feature(s) are available on your cellular service plan. For example, if your cellular service plan provides three-way calling, this feature can be accessed through the UConnect™ system. Check with your cellular service provider for the features that you have.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Answer or Reject an Incoming Call - No Call Currently in Progress

When you receive a call on your cellular phone, the UConnect™ system will interrupt the vehicle audio system, if on, and will ask if you would like to answer the call. To reject the call, press and hold the 'Phone' button until you hear a single beep indicating that the incoming call was rejected.

Answer or Reject an Incoming Call - Call Currently in Progress

If a call is currently in progress and you have another incoming call, you will hear the same network tones for call waiting that you normally hear when using your cell phone. Press the 'Phone' button to place the current call on hold and answer the incoming call. NOTE: The UConnect™ system compatible phones in market today do not support rejecting an incoming call when another call is in progress. Therefore, the user can only either answer an incoming call or ignore it.

Making a Second Call while Current Call in Progress

To make a second call while you are currently in a call, press the 'Voice Recognition' button and say "Dial" or "Call" followed by the phone number or phonebook entry you wish to call. The first call will be on hold while the second call is in progress. To go back to the first call, refer to section "Toggling Between Two Calls." To combine two calls, refer to section "Conference Call."

Place/Retrieve a Call from Hold

To put a call on hold, press the 'Phone' button until you hear a single beep which will indicate that the call has been placed on hold. To bring the call back from hold, press and hold the 'Phone' button until you hear a single beep.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Toggling Between Calls
If two calls are in progress (one active and one on hold), press the 'Phone' button until you hear a single beep indicating that the active and hold status of the two calls have switched. Only one call can be placed on hold at one time.

Conference Call
When two calls are in progress (one active and one on hold), press and hold the 'Phone' button until you hear a double beep indicating that the two calls have been joined into one conference call.

Three-Way Calling
To initiate three-way calling, press the 'Voice Recognition' button while a call is in progress and make a second phone call as described in section "Making a Second Call while Current Call in Progress." After the second call has established, press and hold the 'Phone' button until you hear a double beep indicating that the two calls have been joined into one conference call.

Call Termination
To end a call in progress, momentarily press the 'Phone' button. Only the active call(s) will be terminated and if there is a call on hold, it will become the new active call.

Redial

- Press the 'Phone' button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Redial."
- The UConnect™ system will call the last number that was dialed on your cellular phone. Note: this may not be the last number dialed from the UConnect™ system.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Call Continuation
Call continuation is progression of a phone call on UConnect™ system after the vehicle ignition key has been switched to off. Call continuation functionality available on the vehicle can be any one of three types:

- After ignition key is switched off, a call can continue on the UConnect™ system either until the call ends or until the vehicle battery condition dictates cessation of the call on the UConnect™ system and transfer of the call to the mobile phone.
- After ignition key is switched to off, a call can continue on the UConnect™ system for certain duration, after which the call is automatically transferred from the UConnect™ system to the mobile phone.
- An active call is automatically transferred to the mobile phone after ignition key is switched to off.

UConnect™ System Features

Language Selection
To change the language that the UConnect™ system is using,

- Press the 'Phone' button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say the name of the language you wish to switch to (English, Espanol, or Francais, if so equipped).
- Continue to follow the system prompts to complete language selection.

After selecting one of the languages, all prompts and voice commands will be in that language.

NOTE: After every UConnect™ language change operation, only the language specific 32 name phonebook is usable. The phone pairing is not language specific and usable across all languages.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Emergency Assistance
If you are in an emergency and the mobile phone is reachable:

- Pick up the phone and manually dial the emergency number for your area.

If the phone is not reachable and the UConnect™ system is operational, you may reach the emergency number as follows:

- Press the 'Phone' button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Emergency" and the UConnect™ system will instruct the paired cellular phone to call the emergency number. This feature is only supported in the USA.

NOTE: The emergency number dialed is based on the Country where the vehicle is purchased (911 for USA/ Canada and 060 for Mexico). The number called may not be applicable with the available cellular service and area. The UConnect™ system does slightly lower your chances of successfully making a phone call as to that for the cell phone directly.

Your phone must be turned on and paired to the UConnect™ system to allow use of this vehicle feature in emergency situations when the cell phone has network coverage and stays paired to the UConnect™ system.

Towing Assistance
If you need towing assistance,

- Press the 'Phone' button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Towing Assistance."

NOTE: The Towing Assistance number dialed is based on the Country where the vehicle is purchased (1-800-528-2069 for USA, 1-877-213-4525 for Canada, 55-14-3454 for Mexico city and 1-800-712-3040 for outside Mexico city in Mexico).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Please refer to the 24-Hour Towing Assistance coverage details in the DaimlerChrysler Corporation 24-Hour Towing Assistance Program Guide.

Paging
To learn how to page, refer to section "Working with Automated Systems." Paging works properly except for pagers of certain companies which time-out a little too soon to work properly with the UConnect™ system.

Voice Mail Calling
To learn how to access your voice mail, refer to section "Working with Automated Systems."

Working with Automated Systems
This method is designed to be used in instances where one generally has to press numbers on the cellular phone keypad while navigating through an automated telephony system.

You can use your UConnect™ system to access a voice-mail system or an automated service, such as, paging service or automated customer service. Some services require immediate response selection, in some instances, that may be too quick for use of UConnect™ system.

When calling a number with your UConnect™ system that normally requires you to enter in a touch-tone sequence on your cellular phone keypad, you can push the 'Voice Recognition' button and say the sequence you wish to enter followed by the word "Send." For example, if required to enter your pin number followed with a pound 3 7 4 6 #, you can press the 'Voice Recognition' button and say "3 7 4 6 # Send." Saying a number, or sequence of numbers, followed by "Send" is also to be used to navigate through an automated customer service center menu structure and to leave a number on a pager.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Barge In - Overriding Prompts
The 'Voice Recognition' button can be used when you wish to skip part of a prompt and issue your voice recognition command immediately. For example, if a prompt is playing "Would you like to pair a phone, clear a...," you could press the 'Voice Recognition' button and say "Pair a Phone" to select that option without having to listen to the rest of the voice prompt.

Turning Confirmation Prompts On/Off
Turning confirmation prompts off will stop the system from confirming your choices (e.g. the UConnect™ system will not repeat a phone number before you dial it).

- Press the 'Phone' button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Setup Confirmations." The UConnect™ system will play the current confirmation prompt status and you will be given the choice to change it.

Phone and Network Status Indicators
The UConnect™ system will provide notification to inform you if your cellular phone is in roaming status, has low signal strength, or has a low battery when you are trying to place a phone call.

Dialing Using the Cellular Phone Keypad
You can dial a phone number with your cellular phone keypad and still use the UConnect™ system (while dialing via the cell phone keypad, the user must exercise caution and take precautionary safety measures). By dialing a number with your paired Bluetooth™ cellular phone, the audio will be played through your vehicle's audio system. The UConnect™ system will work the same as if you dial the number using voice recognition.

NOTE: Certain brands of mobile phones do not send the dial ring to the UConnect™ system to play it on the vehicle audio system, so you will not hear it. Under this situation, after successfully dialing a number, the user

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

may feel that the call did not go through even though the call is in progress. Once your call is answered, you will hear the audio.

Mute/Un-mute (Mute off)
When you mute the UConnect™ system, you will still be able to hear the conversation coming from the other party, but the other party will not be able to hear you. In order to mute the UConnect™ system:

- Press the 'Voice Recognition' button.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Mute."

In order to un-mute the UConnect™ system:

- Press the 'Voice Recognition' button.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Mute-off."

Information Service
When using AT&T Wireless Service, dialing to phone number "#121," you can access voice activated automated system to receive news, weather, stocks, traffic, etc. related information.

Advanced Phone Connectivity

Transfer Call to and from Cellular Phone
The UConnect™ system allows on going calls to be transferred to your cellular phone to the UConnect™ system without terminating the call. To transfer an ongoing call from your UConnect™ paired cellular phone to the UConnect™ system or vice-versa, press the 'Voice Recognition' button and say "Transfer Call."

Connect or Disconnect Link Between the UConnect™ System and Cellular Phone
Your cellular phone can be paired with many different electronic devices, but can only be actively "connected" with one electronic device at a time.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

If you would like to connect or disconnect the Bluetooth™ connection between a UConnect™ paired cellular phone and the UConnect™ system, follow the instruction described in your cellular phone user's manual.

List Paired Cellular Phone Names

- Press the 'Phone' button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Setup Phone pairing".
- When prompted, say "List Phones".
- The UConnect™ system will play the phone names of all paired cellular phones in order from the highest to the lowest priority. To "select" or "delete" a paired phone being announced, press the 'Voice recognition' button and say "Select" or "Delete". Also, see next two sections for alternate way of doing this.

Select another Cellular Phone

This feature allows you to select and start using another phone with the UConnect™ system. The phone must have been previously paired to the UConnect™ system that you want to use it with.

- Press the 'Phone' button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Setup Select Phone."
- The phone names (along with priority numbers) will be played.
- When prompted say the priority number of the cellular phone you wish to select. You can also press the 'Voice Recognition' button anytime while the list is being played and say the priority number.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- The selected phone will be used for the next phone call. If the selected phone is not available, the UConnect™ system will return to using the highest priority phone present in or near (approximately with in 30 feet) the vehicle.

Delete UConnect™ Paired Cellular Phones

- Press the 'Phone' button to begin.
- After the "Ready" prompt and the following beep, say "Setup Phone Pairing."
- At the next prompt, say "Delete."
- The phone names (along with priority numbers) will be played.
- When prompted say the priority number of the cellular phone (or "All" to delete all phones) you wish to delete. You can also press the 'Voice Recognition' button anytime while the list is being played and say the priority number.

Things You Should Know About Your UConnect™ System

Voice Recognition (VR)

- Always wait for the beep before speaking.
- Speak normally, without pausing, just as you would speak to a person sitting approximately eight (8) feet away from you.
- Make sure that no one other than you is speaking during a voice recognition period.
- Performance is maximized under:
  - low-to-medium blower setting,
  - low-to-medium vehicle speed,
  - low road noise,
  - smooth road surface,

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- fully closed windows,
- dry weather condition.

- Even though the system is designed for users speaking in North American English and Spanish accents, the system may not always work for some.
- When navigating through an automated system, such as, voice mail, or when sending a page, at the end of speaking the digit string, make sure to say "send."
- Storing names in phonebook when vehicle is not in motion is recommended.
- It is not recommended to store similar sounding names in the UConnect™ phonebook.
- UConnect™ phonebook name tag recognition rate is optimized for the person who stored the name in the phonebook.
- You can say "O" (letter "O") for "0" (zero). "800" must be spoken "eight-zero-zero."
- Even though international dialing for most number combinations is supported, some shortcut dialing number combinations may not be supported.

Far End Audio Performance

- Audio quality is maximized under:
  - low-to-medium blower setting,
  - low-to-medium vehicle speed,
  - low road noise,
  - smooth road surface,
  - fully closed windows, and
  - dry weather condition.
  - Operation from driver seat.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Performance, such as, audio clarity, echo. and loudness to a large degree, rely on the phone and network, and not the UConnect™ system.
- Echo at far end can sometime be reduced by lowering the in-vehicle audio volume.

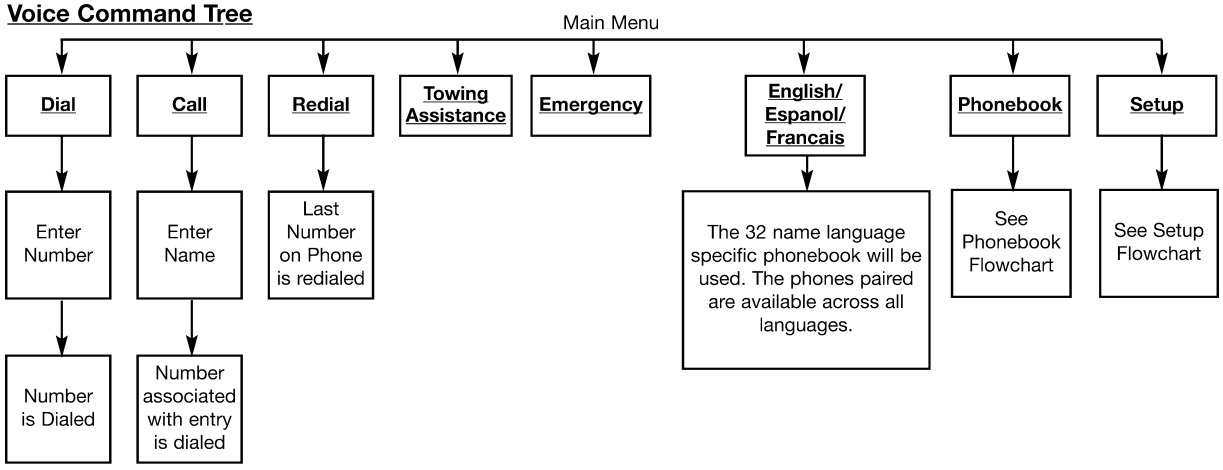
Bluetooth Communication Link
Cellular phones have been found to occasionally loose connection to the UConnect™ system. When this happens, the connection can generally be re-established by switching the phone off/on. Your cell phone is recommended to remain in Bluetooth ″on″ mode.

Reset
In rare instances, it may be necessary to reset the UConnect™ system. The reset feature is exercised by pressing and holding the 'UConnect™ ' and 'Voice Recognition' buttons simultaneously for 15 seconds. Normally, you do not need to exercise this feature.

Power-Up
After switching ignition key from off to either On or ACC position, or after a reset, you must wait at least five (5) seconds prior to using the system.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Voice Command Tree

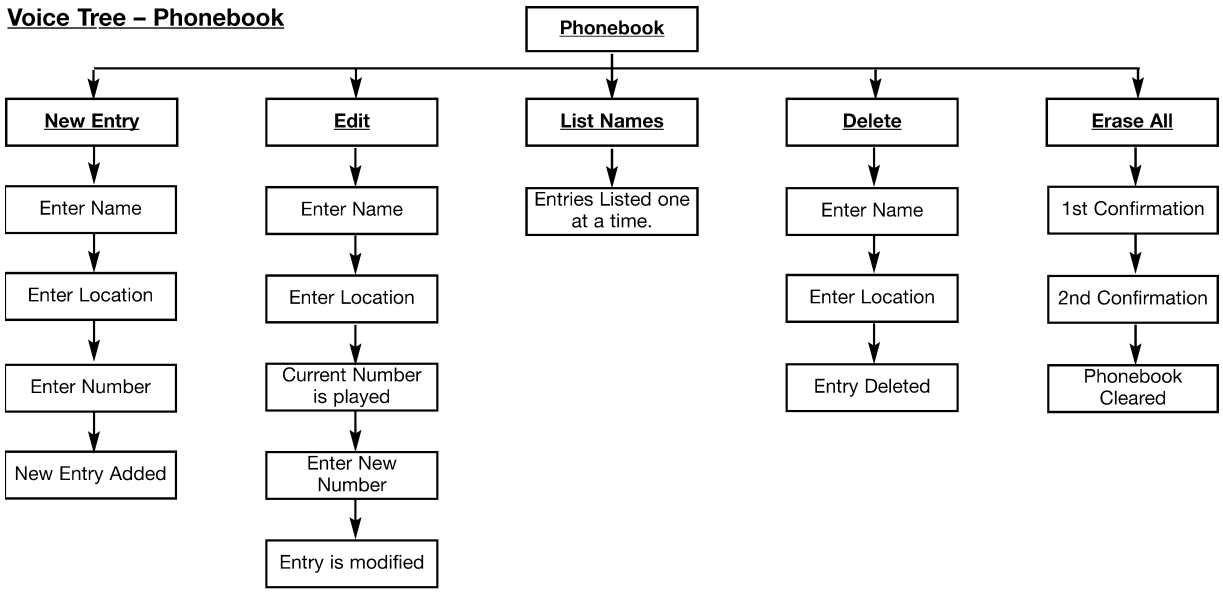


Note: **Available Voice commands are shown in bold face and are underlined.**

815a53fc

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Voice Tree – Phonebook

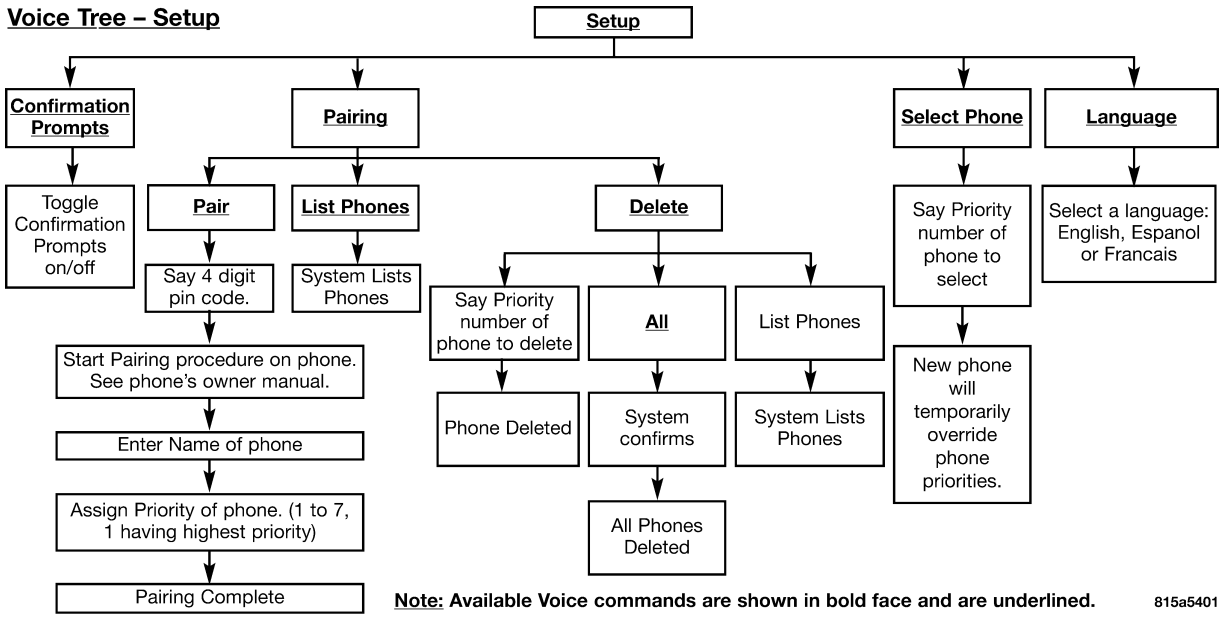


Note: **Available Voice commands are shown in bold face and are underlined.**

8131b294

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Voice Tree – Setup



Note: **Available Voice commands are shown in bold face and are underlined.** 815a5401

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

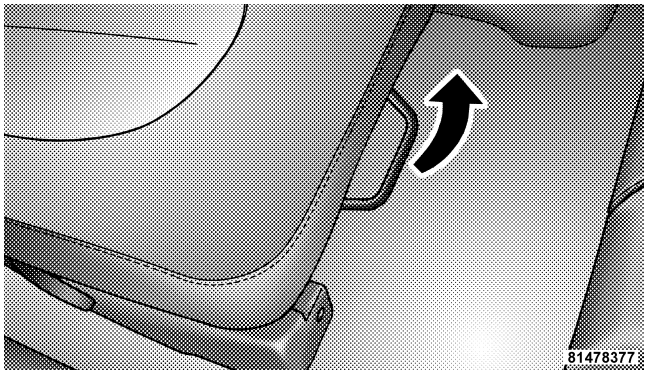
North American English	
Primary	Alternate(s)
Zero	Oh
Add location	Add new
All	All of them
Confirmation prompts	Confirmations prompts
Delete a name	Delete
Language	Select language
List names	List all
List paired phones	List phones
Pager	Beeper
Phone pairing	Pairing
Phonebook	Phone book
Return to main menu	Return. Main menu
Select phone	select
Set up	Phone settings phone set up

SEATS

Manual Seat Adjustment

The adjusting lever is at the front of the seat, near the floor. Lift the lever and move the seat to the desired position. Release the bar to lock the seat into position.

Using body pressure, move forward and rearward on the seat to be sure the seat adjusters have latched.



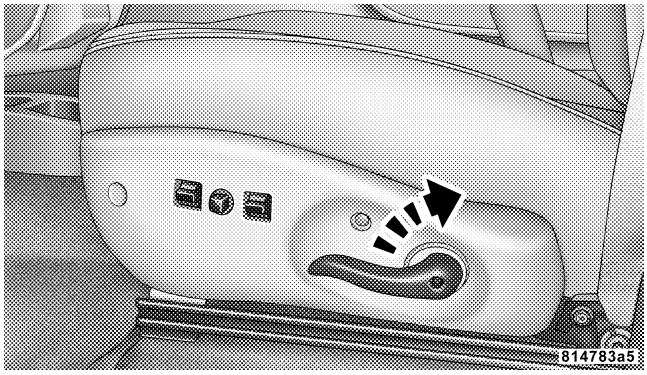
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

Adjusting a seat while the vehicle is moving is dangerous. The sudden movement of the seat could cause you to lose control. The seat belt might not be properly adjusted and you could be injured. Adjust any seat only while the vehicle is parked.

Front Seats Manual Seat Recliners

The front seats are equipped with recliners. The reclining mechanism is operated by a lever located on the right side of the passenger's seat and the left side of the driver's seat. To recline, lean forward slightly before lifting the lever, then push back to the desired position and release the lever. Lean forward and lift the lever to return the seatback to its normal position. Using body pressure, lean forward and rearward on the seat to be sure the seatback is locked.



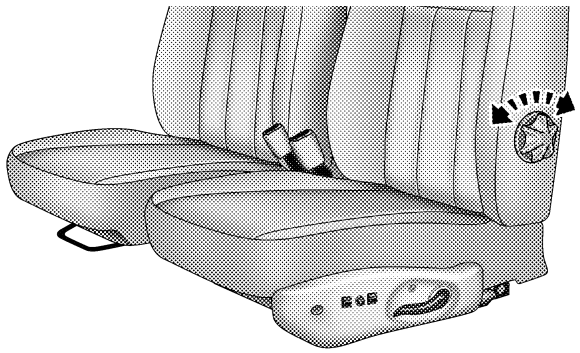
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

Do not ride with the seatback reclined so that the shoulder belt is no longer resting against your chest. In a collision you could slide under the seat belt and be seriously or even fatally injured. Use the recliner only when the vehicle is parked.

Manual Lumbar Support Adjustment — If Equipped

The manual lumbar support rotary control adjustment is located on the left side of the driver's seat. Rotate the knob to increase or decrease the amount of lumbar support.



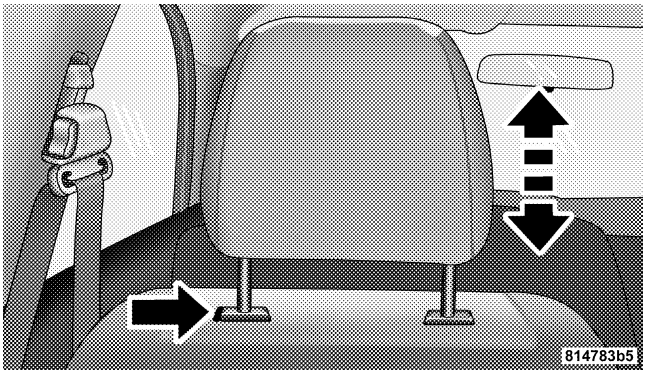
81581858

Adjustable Head Restraints — Front Seating Positions

Head restraints can reduce the risk of whiplash injury in the event of impact from the rear. Pull up or push down on the restraints so that the upper edge is as high as practical, at least to the level of the ears.

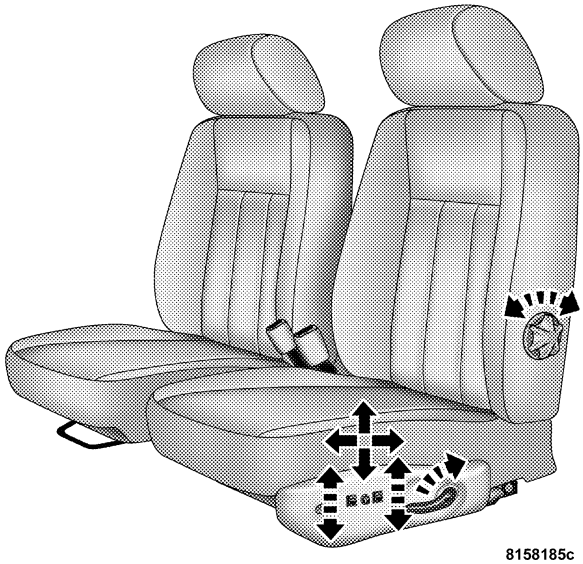
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

To lower the head restraint, depress the release button located at the base of the head restraint and push down on the head restraint.



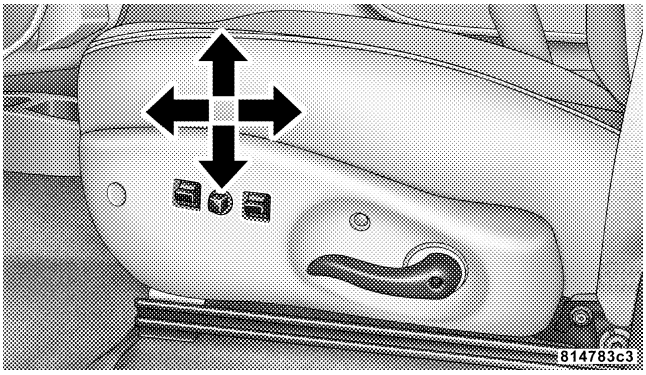
6 - Way Power Seat Adjuster — Driver's Side Only

The 6-way power seat adjuster switches are on the outboard side of the driver's seat. Use this switch to move the seat up or down, forward or rearward, or tilt.



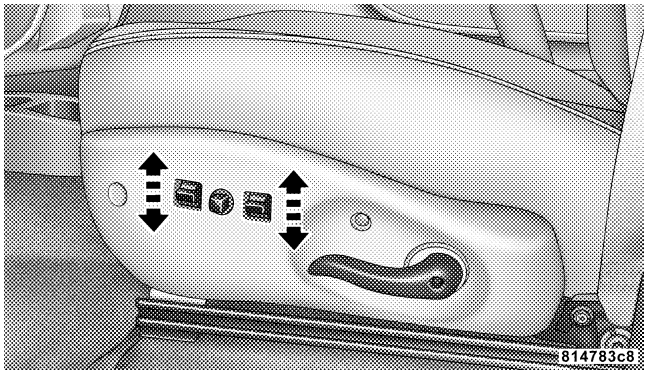
Power Seat Control Location

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Up, Down, Forward, and Rearward

The power seat controls are on the outboard side of the driver's seat cushion. Three switches control the seat movement. The four-way switch in the center can be moved forward or backwards to get the most comfortable position. The same switch can be moved up and down to control seat height. Change the seat angle by using the two toggle switches, tilting it up or down.



Tilt Adjustment

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Club Cab/Quad Cab Rear Seat

More cargo space is available by lifting up on the rear seat cushion.

The Quad Cab rear seat is a 60/40 split cushion and full back. Either cushion can be raised independently.

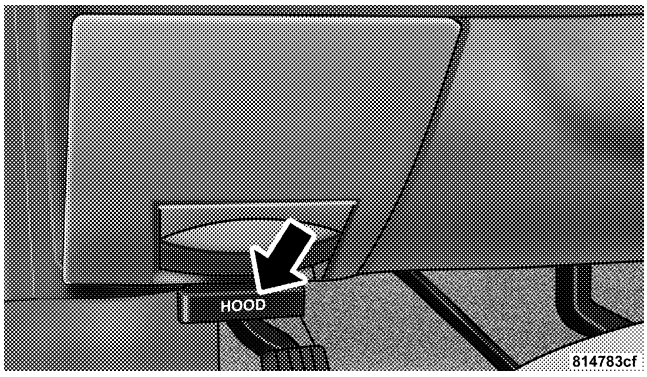
Heated Seats — If Equipped

The heated seat switches are located at the front of the floor console. The engine must be running for the heated seats to operate.

Each heated seat switch has two settings (HI and LOW). Press the switch once to obtain the desired heating position and press a second time in the same direction to turn the heated seats OFF. If you do not purposefully turn the switch OFF, the heating element in the seat will remain activated until the ignition is turned off. The indicators on the switch will illuminate when the heated seats are in the (HI or LOW) position. Flashing telltale lights on the switch indicate that the Heated Seat system needs servicing.

TO OPEN AND CLOSE THE HOOD

To open the hood, two latches must be released. First pull the hood release lever located under the left side of the instrument panel.

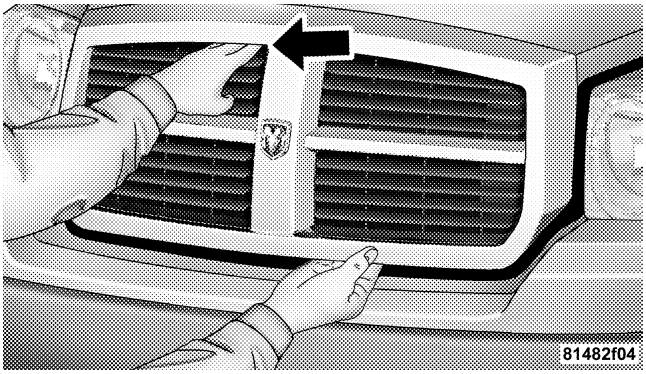


Hood Release Lever Location

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Then push the safety latch lever down while lifting the grille with your right hand. It is located at the top center of the grille just left of center.

Lift the hood and gas filled props will hold it open.



Secondary Latch Location (Push Down)

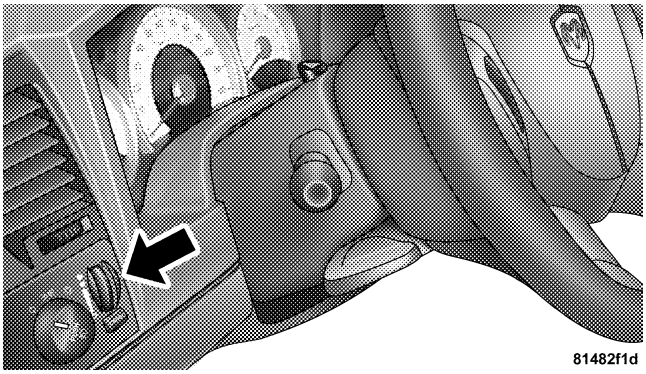
To prevent possible damage, do not slam the hood to close it. Use a firm downward push at the center front edge of the hood to ensure that both latches engage. Never drive your vehicle unless the hood is fully closed, with both latches engaged.

WARNING!

If the hood is not fully latched, it could fly up when the vehicle is moving and block your forward vision. Be sure all hood latches are fully latched before driving.

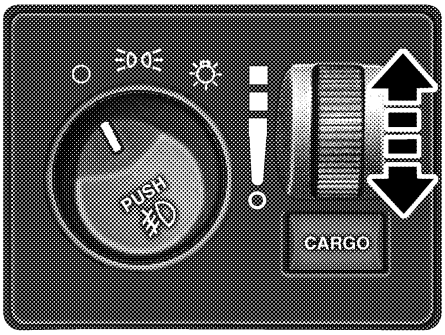
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

LIGHTS



81482f1d

Interior Lights



81482f6a

Courtesy and dome lights are turned on when the front doors are opened, when the dimmer control (rotating wheel on the right side of the switch) is rotated to the second upward detent position, or if equipped, when the UNLOCK button is pressed on the key fob.When a door is open and the interior lights are on, rotating the dimmer

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

control all the way down to the OFF detent will cause all the interior lights to go out. This is also known as the ″Party″ mode because it allows the doors to stay open for extended periods of time without discharging the vehicle's battery.

The brightness of the instrument panel lighting can be regulated by rotating the dimmer control up (brighter) or down (dimmer). When the headlights are ON you can supplement the brightness of the odometer, trip odometer, radio and overhead console by rotating the control up until you hear a click. This feature is termed the "Parade" mode and is useful when headlights are required during the day.

Club Cab/Quad Cab models may have an optional switched dome lamp that may be operated by pressing the lens.

Battery Saver

To protect the life of your vehicle's battery, Load Shedding is provided for both the interior and exterior lights.

If the ignition is off and any door is left ajar for 15 minutes or the dimmer control is rotated upwards for 15 minutes, the interior lights will automatically turn off.

If the headlamps remain on while the ignition is cycled off, the exterior lights will automatically turn off after 8 minutes. If the headlamps are turned on and left on for 8 minutes while the ignition is off, the exterior lights will automatically turn off.

NOTE: Battery Saver mode is cancelled if the ignition is ON.

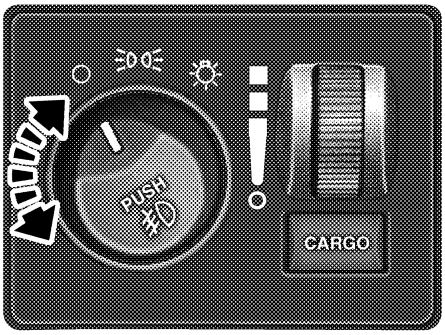
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Headlamp Delay

To aid in your exit, your vehicle is equipped with a headlamp delay that will leave the headlamps on for 60 seconds. This delay is initiated when the ignition is turned OFF while the headlamp switch is on, and then the headlamp switch is cycled off. The headlamps will remain on for 60 seconds. Headlamp delay can be cancelled by either turning the headlamp switch ON then OFF or by turning the ignition ON.

Headlights, Parking Lights, Panel Lights

When the headlight switch is rotated to the first position, the parking lights, taillights, side marker lights, license plate light and instrument panel lights are all turned on. The headlights will turn ON when the switch is rotated to the second position.



81482f22

Your vehicle is equipped with plastic headlight lenses that are lighter and less susceptible to stone breakage than glass headlights.

Plastic is not as scratch resistant as glass and therefore different lens cleaning procedures must be followed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

To minimize the possibility of scratching the lenses and reducing light output, avoid wiping with a dry cloth. To remove road dirt, wash with a mild soap solution followed by rinsing.

Do not use abrasive cleaning components, solvents, steel wool or other abrasive materials to clean the lenses.

Daytime Running Lights (Canada Only)

The headlights on your vehicle will illuminate when the engine is started. This provides a constant "Lights ON" condition until the ignition is turned OFF. The lights illuminate at less than 50% of normal intensity. If the parking brake is applied the Daytime Running Lights will turn off.

Lights-on Reminder

If the headlights, parking lights, courtesy lights or cargo lights are left on, after the ignition is turned off, a chime will sound when the driver's door is opened.

Fog Lights — If Equipped

The foglights are turned ON by placing the headlight rotary control in the parking light or headlight position and pushing in the headlight rotary control. The fog lights will operate only when the parking lights are ON or when the vehicle headlights are ON low beam. An indicator light located in the instrument cluster will illuminate when the fog lights are on. The fog lights will turn off when the switch is pulled out, when the headlight switch is rotated to the OFF position, or the high beam is selected.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CARGO Light — If Equipped

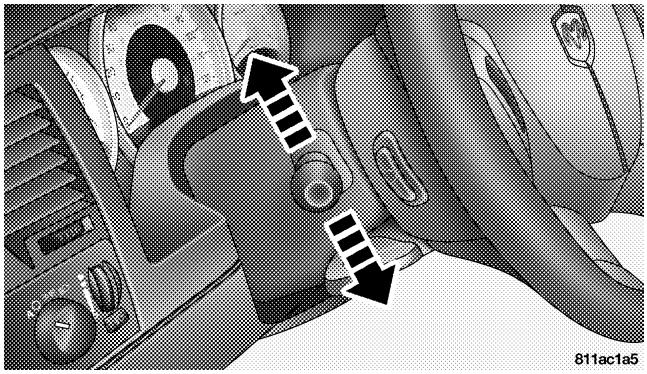
814830fd

The cargo lights are turned on by pressing on the CARGO button. The interior lights will also turn on when the cargo lights are on. The cargo lights will also turn on for 30 seconds when a key fob Unlock is pressed, as part of the illuminated entry feature.

MULTIFUNCTION CONTROL LEVER

The multifunction control lever is located on the left side of the steering column.

Turn Signals



811ac1a5

Move the lever up or down to signal a right-hand or left-hand turn.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The arrow on either side of the instrument cluster flashes to indicate the direction of the turn, and proper operation of the front and rear turn signal lights. If an indicator fails to light when the lever is moved, it would suggest that the switch or indicator lamp is defective.

If a defective bulb or wiring circuit is detected for the turn signal system, the arrow indicators will flash at a faster rate.

You can signal a lane change by moving the lever partially up or down.

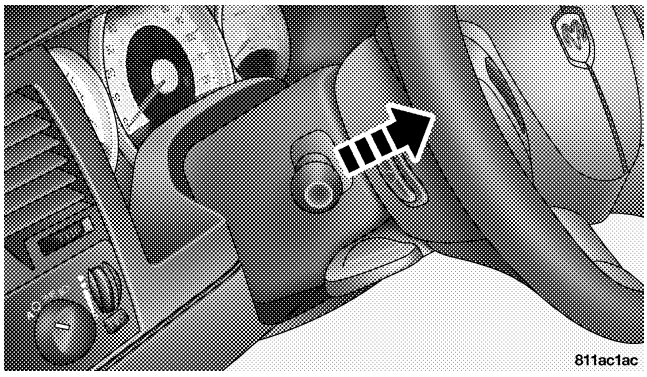
NOTE: If a turn signal has been left on for at least a mile duration, a continuous chime will sound.

Passing Light

You can signal another vehicle with your headlights by partially pulling the multifunction lever toward the steering wheel. This will cause the high beam headlights to turn on until the lever is released.

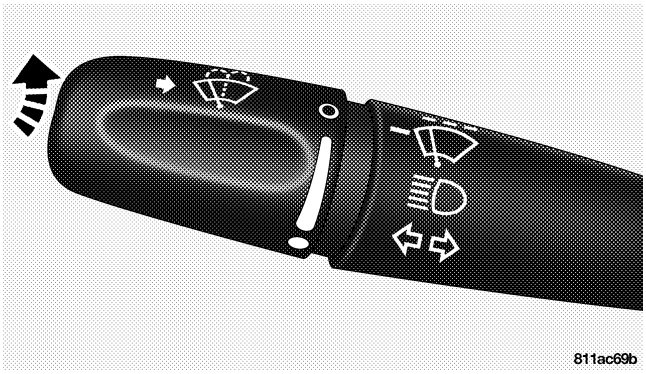
High Beam / Low Beam Select Switch

Pull the multifunction control lever fully toward the steering wheel to switch the headlights from HIGH or LOW beam.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Windshield Wipers



The wipers and washers are operated by a switch in the multifunction control lever. Turn the end of the handle to select the desired wiper speed.

Intermittent Wiper System

The intermittent feature of this system was designed for use when weather conditions make a single wiping cycle, with a variable pause between cycles, desirable. For maximum delay between cycles, rotate the control knob into the upper end of the delay range.

The delay interval decreases as you rotate the knob until it enters the LO continual speed position. The delay can be regulated from a maximum of about 18 seconds between cycles, to a cycle every 2 seconds. The delay intervals will double in duration when the vehicle speed is 10 mph (16 km) or less.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

Sudden loss of visibility through the windshield could lead to an accident. You might not see other vehicles or other obstacles. To avoid sudden icing of the windshield during freezing weather, warm the windshield with defroster before and during windshield washer use.

NOTE: If the front wiper is operating when the ignition is turned off, the wiper will automatically return to the "Park" position. When the vehicle is restarted, the wipers will resume operation.

Windshield Washers

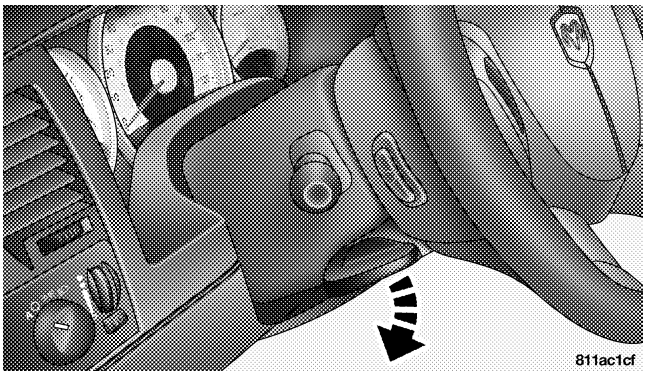
To use the washer, push in on the washer knob on the end of the multifunction control lever and hold while spray is desired. If the washer knob is depressed while in the delay range, the wiper will operate for several seconds after the washer knob is released. It will then resume the intermittent interval previously selected. If the washer knob is pushed, for a period greater than 1 second, while in the OFF position, the wiper will wipe approximately three wipes, after the wash knob is released.

To prevent freeze-up of your windshield washer system in cold weather, select a solution or mixture that meets or exceeds the temperature range of your climate. This rating information can be found on most washer fluid containers.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

TILT STEERING COLUMN

To tilt the column, push down on the lever below the turn signal control and move the wheel up or down, as desired.



WARNING!

Tilting the steering column while the vehicle is moving is dangerous. Without a stable steering column, you could lose control of the vehicle and have an accident. Adjust the column only while the vehicle is stopped. Be sure it is locked before driving.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

ELECTRONIC SPEED CONTROL — IF EQUIPPED

When engaged, this device takes over accelerator operation at speeds greater than (refer to the table below for the speed for your specific engine). The controls are mounted on the steering wheel.

To Activate

Push the ON/OFF button to the ON position. In the instrument cluster, the word "CRUISE" illuminates when the system is on.

To Set At A Desired Speed

When the vehicle has reached the desired speed, press and release the SET button. Release the accelerator and the vehicle will operate at the selected speed.

To Deactivate

A soft tap on the brake pedal, normal braking, or pressing the CANCEL button will deactivate speed control without erasing the memory. Pushing the ON/OFF button to the OFF position or turning off the ignition erases the memory.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

Leaving the Speed Control ON when not in use is dangerous. You could accidentally set the system to cause it to go faster than you want. You could lose control and have an accident. Always leave the system OFF when you aren't using it.

To Resume Speed

To resume a previously set speed, push and release the RESUME button. Resume can be used at any speed above (refer to the table below for the speed for your specific engine).

To Vary The Speed Setting

When the speed control is on, speed can be increased by pressing and holding the ACCEL button. When the button is released, a new set speed will be established.

Tapping the ACCEL button once will result in a speed increase (refer to the table below for the speed for your specific engine). Each time the button is tapped, speed increases so that tapping the button three times will increase speed by three increments.

Tapping the DECEL button once will result in a speed decrease (refer to the table below for the speed for your specific engine). Each time the button is tapped, speed will decrease. For example, tapping the button 3 times will decrease the speed by 3 times the speed listed in the table below (refer to the table below for the speed for your specific engine).

To decrease speed while the speed control is on, press and hold the DECEL button. Release the button when the desired speed is reached, and the new speed will be set.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Functions	3.7L	4.7L	4.7L HO
Engage Speed	30 mph (48 km/h)	30 mph (48 km/h)	30 mph (48 km/h)
Minimun RESUME Speed	25 mph (40 km/h)	25 mph (40 km/h)	25 mph (40 km/h)
ACCEL Increase	2 mph (3km/h)	2 mph (3km/h)	2 mph (3 km/h)
DECEL Decrease	1 mph (2 km/h)	1 mph (2 km/h)	1 mph (2 km/h)
Dropout Speed	25 mph (40 km/h)	25 mph (40 km/h)	25 mph (40 km/h)

To Accelerate For Passing

Depress the accelerator as you would normally. When the pedal is released, the vehicle will return to the set speed.

NOTE: When driving uphill, at elevations above 2,000 feet (610 meters), or when the vehicle is heavily loaded (especially when towing) the vehicle may slow below the SET speed. If the vehicle speed drops below (refer to the table below for the speed for your specific engine), the speed control will automatically disengage. If this happens, you can push down on the accelerator pedal to maintain the desired speed.

Vehicles equipped with a Automatic transmission may exhibit several downshifts under the above conditions. To reduce the frequency of the downshifts and to improve vehicle performance, it is advisable to lock out overdrive by pressing the "TOW/HAUL" button located at the end of the gear shifter.

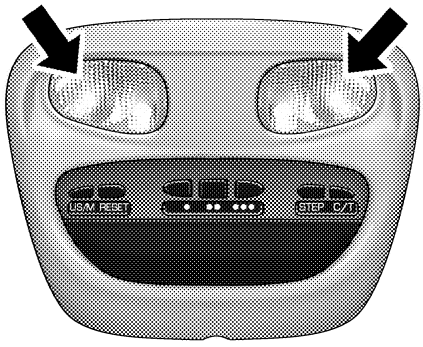
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

Speed Control can be dangerous where the system can't maintain a constant speed. Your vehicle could go too fast for the conditions, and you could lose control. An accident could be the result. Don't use Speed Control in heavy traffic or on roads that are winding, icy, snow-covered, or slippery.

OVERHEAD CONSOLE

The overhead console has the following features:



81471171

- Courtesy Lights
- Garage Door Opener — If Equipped
- Compass/Temperature Mini-Trip Computer — If Equipped

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Courtesy/Reading Lights

Near the front of the console are two courtesy/reading lights.

Both lights illuminate as courtesy lights when a door is opened, when the dimmer control is rotated to the courtesy light position (fully upward position), or when the UNLOCK button is pressed on the Remote Keyless Entry transmitter, if so equipped. These lights are also operated individually as reading lights by pressing the recessed area of the corresponding lens.

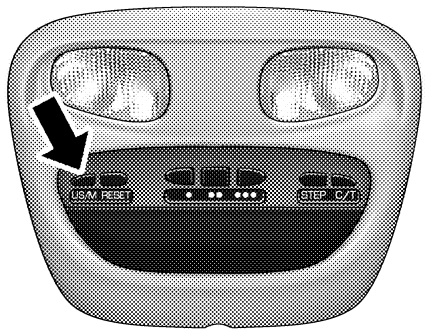
NOTE: The courtesy/reading lights will remain on until the switch is pressed a second time, so be sure they have been turned off before leaving the vehicle. If the interior lights are left on after the vehicle is turned OFF, they will extinguish after 8 minutes.

COMPASS/TEMPERATURE MINI-TRIP COMPUTER

This feature allows you to choose between a compass/temperature display and one of four trip conditions being monitored.

US/M Button

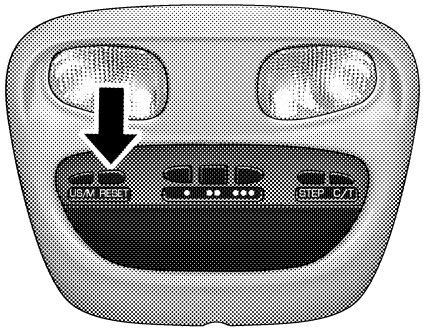
Use this button to change the display from U.S. to metric measurement units.



81473559

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

RESET Button



814735c6

Use this button to reset the following displays to zero:

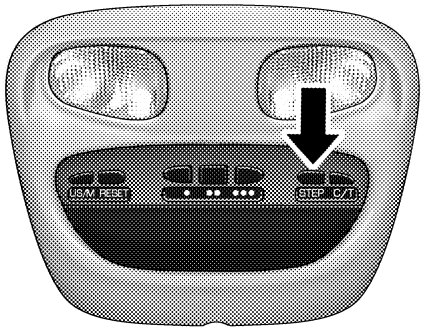
- Average Fuel Economy
- Trip Odometer
- Elapsed time.

Global Reset

If the RESET button and STEP button are pressed at the same time and held for 3 seconds the Global Reset feature will reset the distance to empty (using a default fuel economy value), fuel economy, trip odometer, and elapsed time displays.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Step Button



8147363a

Use this button to choose or cycle through the four trip conditions.

Average Fuel Economy (AVG ECO)

Shows the average fuel economy since the last reset. This display mode becomes less sensitive to instantaneous changes in fuel consumption as the number of total vehicle miles since the last reset increases. It is suggested that this mode be reset periodically for general operation or when driving conditions change significantly (for example, at the end of a trip or when a trailer is connected or disconnected).

Distance To Empty (DTE)

Shows the estimated distance that can be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank. The estimated distance is determined by a weighted average of the instantaneous and average fuel economy, according to the current fuel tank level.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

When Distance To Empty = 0, the fuel gauge pointer will initially be on the red "E" marker. At this point (fuel gauge pointer on the the red "E" marker) there is reserve fuel capacity, which corresponds to approximately 8% of tank volume. This reserve capacity was put in place to prevent the likelihood of customers running out of fuel when operating at maximum load conditions in areas where there aren't many gas stations.

NOTE: The Distance To Empty will remain equal to zero, until the vehicle runs out of fuel or is refueled.

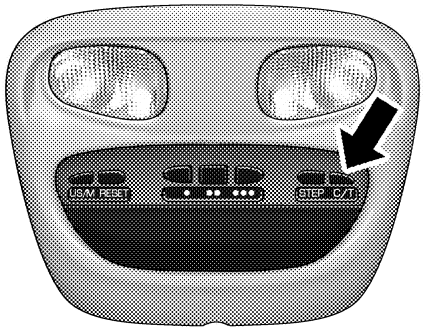
Trip Odometer (ODO)

This display shows the distance traveled since the last reset.

Elapsed Time (ET)

This display shows the accumulated ignition ON time since the last reset.

C/T Button



81473657

Use this button to select a readout of the outside temperature and one of eight compass headings that indicate the direction in which the vehicle is facing.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Compass/Temperature Display

WARNING!

Even if the display still reads a few degrees above 32°F (0°C), the road surface may be icy, particularly in woods or on bridges. Drive carefully under such conditions to prevent an accident and possible personal injury or property damage.

Automatic Compass Calibration

This compass is self-calibrating which eliminates the need to manually set the compass. When the vehicle is new, the compass may appear erratic and the CAL symbol will be displayed.

After completing one 360° turn, with the vehicle traveling less than 5 mph (8 km/h), in an area free from large metal or metallic objects, the CAL symbol will turn off and the compass will function normally.

Manual Compass Calibration

NOTE: To ensure proper compass calibration, make sure the compass variance is properly set before manually calibrating the compass.

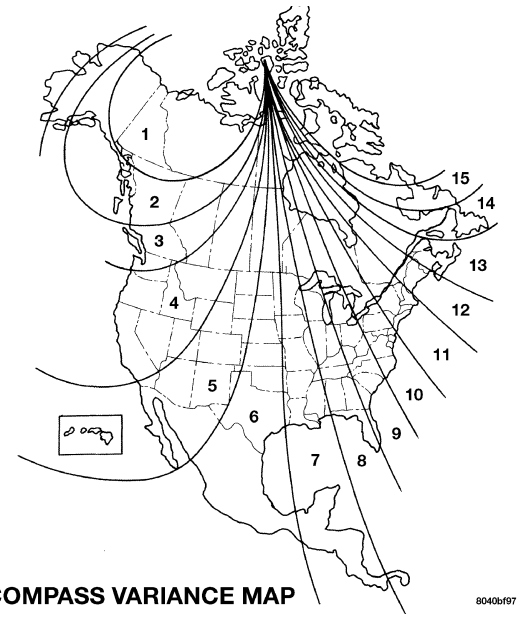
If the compass appears erratic and the CAL symbol does not appear, you must manually put the compass into the "Calibration" mode.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

To Put Into a Calibration Mode

Turn on the ignition and set the display to "Compass/ Temperature." Press and hold the RESET button to change the display between VAR (compass variance) and CAL (compass calibration) modes. When the CAL symbol is displayed complete one 360 degree turn in an area free from large metal objects or power lines. The CAL symbol will turn off and the compass will function normally.

Compass Variance is the difference between magnetic north and geographic north. In some areas of the country, the difference between magnetic and geographic north is great enough to cause the compass to give false readings. If this occurs, the compass variance must be set according to the Compass Variance Map.



COMPASS VARIANCE MAP 8040bf97

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

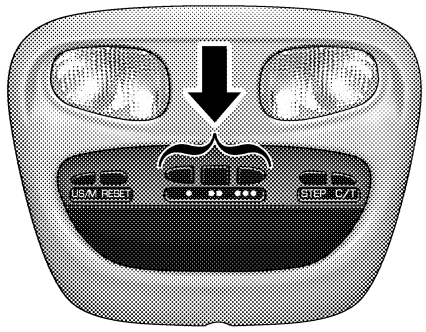
To set the variance: Turn the ignition ON and set the display to "Compass/Temperature." Press and hold the RESET button approximately five seconds. The last variance zone number will be displayed. Press the STEP button to select the new variance zone and press the RESET button to resume normal operation.

Outside Temperature

Because the ambient temperature sensor is located underhood, engine temperature can influence the displayed temperature, therefore, temperature readings are slowly updated when the vehicle speed is below 20 mph (30 km/h) or during stop and go driving.

GARAGE DOOR OPENER — IF EQUIPPED

The HomeLink® Universal Transceiver replaces up to three remote controls (hand held transmitters) that operate devices such as garage door openers, motorized gates, or home lighting. It triggers these devices at the push of a button. The Universal Transceiver operates off your vehicle's battery and charging system; no batteries are needed.



814711cd

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

For additional information on HomeLink®, call 1–800–355–3515, or on the internet at www.homelink.com.

WARNING!

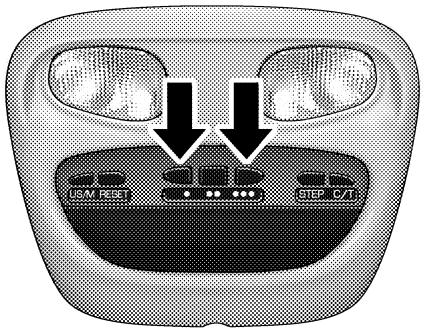
A moving garage door can cause injury to people and pets in the path of the door. People or pets could be seriously or fatally injured. Only use this transceiver with a garage door opener that has a "stop and reverse" feature as required by federal safety standards. This includes most garage door opener models manufactured after 1982. Do not use a garage door opener without these safety features it could cause injury or death. Call toll-free 1–800–355–3515 or, on the Internet at www.homelink.com for safety information or assistance.

Programming HomeLink

NOTE: When programming a garage door opener, it is advised to park outside the garage. It is also recommended that a new battery be placed in the hand-held transmitter of the device being programmed to HomeLink for quicker training and accurate transmission of the radio-frequency signal.

1. Press and hold the two outer HomeLink buttons, and release only when the indicator light begins to flash (after 20 seconds). **Do not** hold the buttons for longer than 30 seconds and **do not** repeat step one to program a second and/or third hand-held transmitter to the remaining two HomeLink buttons.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



814711d7

WARNING!

Vehicle exhaust contains carbon monoxide, a dangerous gas. Do not run the vehicle's exhaust while training the transceiver. Exhaust gas can cause serious injury or death.

WARNING!

Your motorized door or gate will open and close while you are training the Universal Transceiver. Do not train the transceiver if people or pets are in the path of the door or gate. A moving door or gate can cause serious injury or death to people and pets or damage to objects.

2. Position the end of your hand-held transmitter 1-3 inches (3-8 cm) away from the HomeLink buttons while keeping the indicator light in view.

3. Simultaneously press and hold both the HomeLink button that you want to train and the hand-held transmitter buttons. **Do not release the buttons until step 4 has been completed.**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE: Some gate operators and garage door openers may require you to replace this Programming Step 3 with procedures noted in the ″Gate Operator/Canadian Programming″ section.

4. The HomeLink indicator light will flash slowly and then rapidly after HomeLink successfully receives the frequency signal from the hand-held transmitter. Release both buttons after the indicator light changes from the slow to the rapid flash.

5. Press and hold the just trained HomeLink button and observe the indicator light. If the indicator light **stays on constantly, programming is complete** and your device should activate when the HomeLink button is pressed and released.

NOTE: To program the remaining two HomeLink buttons, begin with ″Programming″ **step two. Do not repeat step one.**

If the indicator light blinks **rapidly for two seconds and then turns to a constant light, continue with ″Programming″ steps 6-8** to complete the programming of a rolling code equipped device (most commonly a garage door opener).

6. At the garage door opener receiver (motor-head unit) in the garage, locate the ″learn″ or ″smart″ button. This can usually be found where the hanging antenna wire is attached to the motor-head unit.

7. Firmly press and release the ″learn″ or ″smart″ button. (The name and color of the button may vary by manufacturer.)

NOTE: There are 30 seconds in which to initiate step eight.

8. Return to the vehicle and firmly **press, hold for two seconds and release** the programmed HomeLink button. Repeat the **″press/hold/release″** sequence a second time,

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

and, depending on the brand of the garage door opener (or other rolling code equipped device), repeat this sequence a third time to complete the programming.

HomeLink should now activate your rolling code equipped device.

NOTE: To program the remaining two HomeLink buttons, begin with ″Programming″ **step two. Do not repeat step one**. For questions or comments, please contact HomeLink at **www.homelink.com or 1-800-355-3515**.

Canadian Programming/Gate Programming

Canadian radio-frequency laws require transmitter signals to ″time-out″ (or quit) after several seconds of transmission which may not be long enough for HomeLink to pick up the signal during programming. Similar to this Canadian law, some U.S. gate operators are designed to ″time-out″ in the same manner.

If you live in Canada or you are having difficulties programming a gate operator by using the ″Programming″ procedures (regardless of where you live), **replace ″Programming HomeLink″ step 3** with the following:

NOTE: If programming a garage door opener or gate operator, it is advised to unplug the device during the ″cycling″ process to prevent possible overheating.

3. Continue to press and hold the HomeLink button while you **press and release every two seconds** (″cycle″) your hand-held transmitter until the frequency signal has successfully been accepted by HomeLink. (The indicator light will flash slowly and then rapidly.) Proceed with ″Programming″ step four to complete.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Using HomeLink

To operate, simply press and release the programmed HomeLink button. Activation will now occur for the trained device (i.e. garage door opener, gate operator, security system, entry door lock, home/office lighting, etc.). For convenience, the hand-held transmitter of the device may also be used at any time. In the event that there are still programming difficulties or questions, contact HomeLink at: **www.homelink.com or 1-800-355-3515**.

Erasing HomeLink Buttons

To erase programming from the three buttons (individual buttons cannot be erased but can be ″reprogrammed″ - note below), follow the step noted:

- Press and hold the two outer HomeLink buttons until the indicator light begins to flash-after 20 seconds. Release both buttons. Do not hold for longer that 30 seconds. HomeLink is now in the train (or learning) mode and can be programmed at any time beginning with ″Programming″ - step 2.

Reprogramming a Single HomeLink Button

To program a device to HomeLink using a HomeLink button previously trained, follow these steps:

1. Press and hold the desired HomeLink button. **Do NOT** release the button.

2. The indicator light will begin to flash after 20 seconds. Without releasing the HomeLink button, proceed with ″Programming″ step 2

For questions or comments, contact HomeLink at: **www.homelink.com or 1-800-355-3515**.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Security

Garage Door Opener Operation with Security Alarm (if equipped)

If your vehicle is equipped with the Security Alarm feature, the operation of the HomeLink feature will be purposely inhibited if the Security Alarm is "Armed". This prevents HomeLink operation due to un-authorized vehicle entry. HomeLink operation will be re-stored when the Security Alarm has been "Disarmed".

If you sell your vehicle, be sure to erase the frequencies.

To erase all of the previously trained frequencies, hold down both outside buttons until the green light begins to flash.

This device complies with part 15 of FCC rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference.
- This device must accept any interference that may be received including interference that may cause undesired operation.

NOTE: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

HomeLink® is a trademark owned by Johnson Controls, Inc.

ELECTRICAL POWER OUTLETS

This vehicle has two 12V auxiliary power outlets that can provide up to 20 Amps of current for accessories designed for use with standard power outlet adapters. The outlets are located in the instrument panel, below the temperature control setting knob, and the other inside the full - size center console. As a safety precaution, the outlet in the instrument panel only operates with the ignition switch ON. When the optional Cigar Lighter heating element is used, it heats when pushed in and pops out

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

automatically when ready for use. **To preserve the heating element, do not hold the lighter in the heating position.**

The console outlet can be reconfigured by the customer to operate only when the ignition is On (switch battery fed) or with the ignition switch On/Off (battery fed) to allow for cellular phone charging and/or operation while the ignition is Off.

NOTE: All accessories connected to these outlets should be removed or turned OFF when the vehicle is not in use to protect the battery against discharge (unless the customer has reconfigured the fuse block to switched battery feed).

Electrical Outlet Use With Engine OFF (Battery Fed Configuration)

CAUTION!

- **Many accessories that can be plugged in draw power from the vehicle's battery, even when not in use (i.e. cellular phones, etc.). Eventually, if plugged in long enough, the vehicle's battery will discharge sufficiently to degrade battery life and/or prevent engine starting.**
- **Accessories that draw higher power (i.e. coolers, vacuum cleaners, lights, etc.), will discharge the battery even more quickly. Only use these intermittently and with greater caution.**
- **After the use of high power draw accessories, or long periods of the vehicle not being started (with accessories still plugged in), the vehicle must be driven a sufficient length of time to allow the generator to recharge the vehicle's battery.**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

FLOOR CONSOLE — IF EQUIPPED

Floor Console Features

Floor Console Features

The Floor Console between the driver's and front passenger's seat, has the following features:

- Miscellaneous storage compartments
- Flexible cup holder inserts
- Portable phone storage bin
- Portable phone cord routing between lid and base on forward edge
- 12 Volt battery fed power outlet inside storage compartment
- Side open armrest lid
- Tissue holder & pen holder
- Coin slots

The coin slots are located under the instrument panel center stack.

Storage Compartments
Some miscellaneous storage compartments and cup holders have rubber mats at the bottom, the mats are both removable and dishwasher safe for cleaning purposes. Various storage compartments provide versatile and useful storage. A coin holder is also provided inside the console storage compartment.

Cup Holders
The cup holders fit a wide variety of cup and bottle sizes. To use the adjustable cup holders (only in automatic transmission vehicles) place your beverage in the cup holder well, then adjust the movable arms to tightly hold the beverage.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Power Outlet and Portable Phone Storage
The console is equipped with a power outlet, portable phone storage bin, and phone cord routing. The phone storage bin can be used when ease access to the phone is needed. Also the power outlet inside console compartment can be used to power up the phone while it is being stored in the bin. To use plug in the portable power recharge cord and place the cord along the slot provided in the left side of the console. Close the console armrest lid and plug the power cord into the phone while resting the phone in the bin. The power outlet may be used for any portable item with a standard 12 volt power plug.

Side Open Armrest Lid
Pressing the button on the left side of the console opens the console armrest lid. The armrest lid will remain open until armrest lid is closed manually by pressing the lid back into place. A penholder is provided on the inside of the armrest lid. A tissue holder is also provided on the inside of the armrest lid, which holds a pocket size soft pack of tissue.

CENTER STORAGE COMPARTMENT — IF EQUIPPED

The center portion of the seat folds down to provide an armrest with unique storage compartments under the lid. Push the button on the armrest to raise the lid. Compartments include a holder which will accommodate five compact disks with finger notches for easier access, a pencil tray, a coin holder, and a large open area for miscellaneous items.

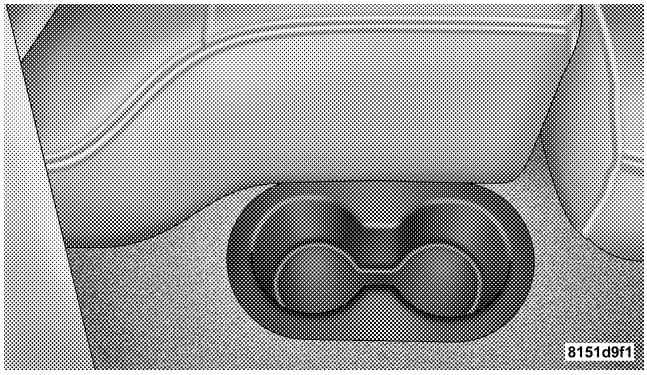
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CUP HOLDERS

If your vehicle has bucket seats with a center console, there are three cup holders located on the console. Refer to the section on floor console.

A two-cavity cup holder is available on all Quad Cab with rear seats mounted on the floor.

Front Cup Holders – Quad Cab with Automatic



Rear Cup Holders – Quad Cab with Automatic

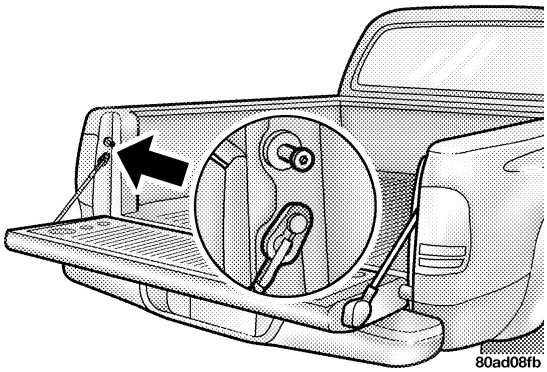
TAILGATE

To simplify mounting of a camper unit with an overhang, the tailgate can be removed quickly. Follow these steps:

1. Open the tailgate to a 45° angle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Unclip and remove the cables from the box while maintaining a 45° angle.



3. Lift the tailgate off of the pivot on the passenger side by pulling upward and rearward at the same time.

4. Slide the tailgate to the passenger side while making sure clearance from the box and taillight is maintained.

To reinstall the tailgate, do the following:

1. Slide the tailgate onto the driver's side pivot.

2. Hold the tailgate at a 45° angle and insert it into the passenger side pivot.

3. Clip the cables to the box.

SLIDE-IN CAMPERS

Camper Applications

Certain truck models are not recommended for slide-in campers. To determine if your vehicle is excluded, please refer to the Consumer Information Truck-Camper Loading document located in your Owner's Manual packet or available from your dealer. For safety reasons, follow all instructions on this important document.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

General Information

The Manufacturer's Warranty does not apply to body modifications and special equipment, such as a camper unit, heaters, stoves, refrigerators, etc., supplied by manufacturers other than the manufacturer. For warranty coverage and service on these items, contact the applicable manufacturer.

To mount a camper unit with an overhang, the tailgate can be removed. Unlatch tailgate and remove support cables from the retainer pins. Raise right side of tailgate until the lower right side pivot clears the hanger bracket. Then slide the tailgate to the right to remove.

Carbon Monoxide Warning Vehicles Equipped With A Cap or Slide-In Campers

To avoid inhaling carbon monoxide, which is deadly, the exhaust system on vehicles equipped with "Cap or Slide-In Campers" should extend beyond the overhanging camper compartment and be free of leaks.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

INSTRUMENT PANEL AND CONTROLS

CONTENTS

- Instruments And Controls 150
- Instrument Cluster 151
- Instrument Cluster Description 152
- Radio Reception Information 159
  - AM Reception 159
  - FM Reception 159
- Electronic Digital Clock 160
  - Clock Setting Procedure 160
- Sales Code REF — AM/FM/CD (Single Disc) Radio With Optional Hands Free Phone Capability 161
  - Operating Instructions - Radio Mode 161
  - Operation Instructions - CD Mode 164
  - Operating Instructions - Hands Free Phone — If Equipped 166

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Sales Code RAQ – AM/FM/CD (6-Disc) Radio With Optional Satellite Radio, Hands Free Phone, And Video Capabilities 166
- □ Operating Instructions - Radio Mode 166
- □ Operation Instructions - (CD Mode For CD Audio Play) 170
- □ Load/Eject Button (CD Mode For CD Audio Play) 172
- □ Notes On Playing MP3 Files 174
- □ Operation Instructions - (CD Mode For MP3 Audio Play) 176
- □ Load/Eject Button (CD Mode For MP3 Play) . .176

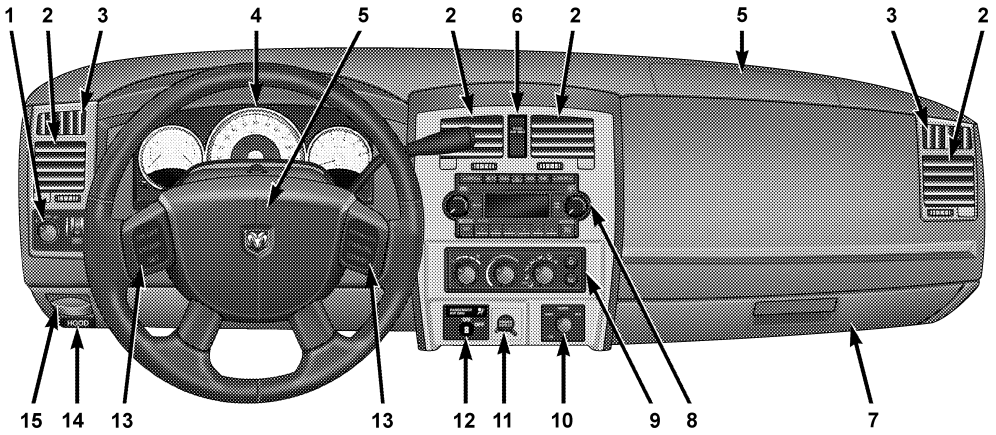
■ Satellite Radio — If Equipped 178
- □ System Activation 179
- □ Electronic Serial Number/Sirius Identification Number (ESN/SID) 179
- □ Selecting Satellite Mode In REF Radios 180
- □ Selecting Satellite Mode In RAQ Radios 180
- □ Selecting a Channel 180
- □ Storing And Selecting Pre-Set Channels 181
- □ Using The PTY (Program Type) Button (If Equipped) 181
- □ PTY Button ″Scan″ 181
- □ PTY Button ″Seek″ 181
- □ Satellite Antenna 181
- □ Reception Quality 182

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Remote Sound System Controls — If Equipped . . 182
□ Radio Operation 183
□ CD Player 183
■ Compact Disc Maintenance 183
■ Radio Operation And Cellular Phones 184
■ Climate Controls 184
□ Air Conditioning And Heater 185
□ Operating Tips 188
□ Operation Tips Chart 190
■ Rear Window Defroster – If Equipped 191

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

INSTRUMENTS AND CONTROLS



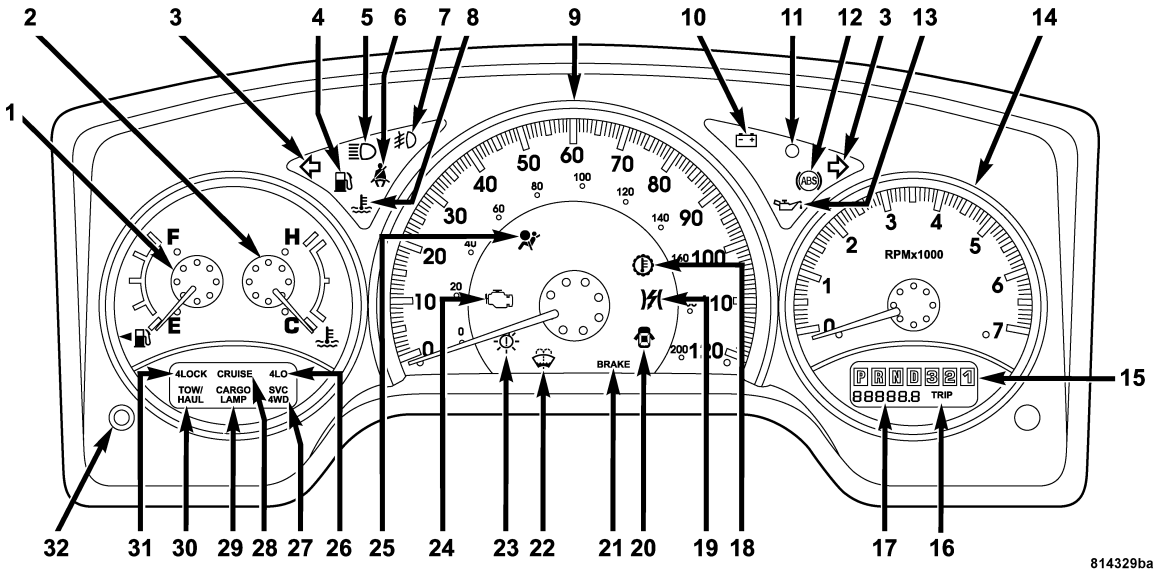
1. Headlight Switch
2. Air Outlets
3. Demister Outlets
4. Instrument Cluster
5. Airbags
6. Passenger Airbag Off Indicator
7. Glove Box
8. Radio
9. Climate Controls
10. Transfer Case Switch*
11. Power Outlet
12. Passenger Air Bag On/Off Switch
13. Speed Control Switches
14. Hood Release
15. Parking Brake Release

*If Equipped

8147570f

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER



Information Provided by:
DEALER
E-PROCESS

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DESCRIPTION

1. Fuel Gage

The fuel gauge shows level of fuel in tank when ignition switch is in the ON position. (See page 245 for more information.)

2. Temperature Gage

The temperature gage indicates engine coolant temperature. Any reading within the normal range indicates that the cooling system is operating satisfactorily. The gage needle in V6 and V8 engines will likely indicate a high temperature when driving in hot weather, up mountain grades, in heavy traffic, or when towing a trailer. If the needle rises to the "H" mark, stop the vehicle, shift into N (Neutral) increase engine speed for 2-3 minutes. If the temperature reading does not return to normal, seek authorized service immediately.

CAUTION!

Do not leave your vehicle unattended with the engine running as you would not be able to react to the temperature indicator if the engine overheats.

The gage pointer will remain near its last reading when the engine is turned off. It will return to a true reading when the engine is restarted.

3. Turn Signal Indicators

When a turn signal is activated, a right-pointing or left-pointing arrow lights up and flashes to indicate the direction of the turn. These indicators also indicate proper operation of the front and rear turn signal lights. If either indicator flashes at a faster rate than normal, check for a defective bulb. If either indicator fails to light up when the lever is moved, check for a defective fuse or turn signal LED. A single chime is activated when the

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

left/right turn signal is left on with the engine RPM vehicle speed greater than 15 mph (24 km/h) for more than one mile. (See page 118 for more information.)

4. Low Fuel Warning Light

This indicator lights when the fuel gauge reads 1/8 of a tank or less. There is a pointer on the side of this symbol that indicates the side that your fuel filler door is located.

5. High Beam Indicator

Indicates that headlights are on high beam.

6. Seat Belt Reminder Light

This light comes on for several seconds after the ignition is turned ON as a reminder to "buckle up." This light will remain on as long as the seat belt remains unbuckled. If this light flashes, it indicates a fault in the airbag system. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer. (See page 32 for more information.)

7. Fog Light Indicator — If Equipped

This light shows when the fog lights are ON.

8. Coolant Temperature Light

This light warns of an overheated engine condition. For a bulb check, this light will come on momentarily when the ignition is turned On. If the light turns on while driving, stop the vehicle, shift into N (Neutral) and increase the engine speed for 2 to 3 minutes. If the temperature reading does not return to normal, seek authorized service immediately.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION!

Driving with a hot engine cooling system could damage your vehicle. If the temperature light is on, safely pull over and stop the vehicle. Idle the vehicle in neutral with the air conditioner turned off until the light turns off. If the if the light remains on, turn the engine off immediately, and call for service.

WARNING!

A hot engine cooling system is dangerous. You or others could be badly burned by steam or boiling coolant. You may want to call a service center if your vehicle overheats. If you decide to look under the hood yourself, see Section 7 of this manual. Follow the warnings under the Cooling System Pressure Cap paragraph.

9. Speedometer
Shows the vehicles speed.

10. Voltage Light

This light monitors the electrical system voltage. The light should turn on momentarily as the engine is started. If the light stays on or turns on while driving, it indicates a problem with the charging system. Immediate service should be obtained.

11. Security Light
This light will flash rapidly for approximately 15 seconds when the vehicle theft alarm is arming. The light will flash at a slower speed continuously after the alarm is set. The security light will also come on for about three seconds when the ignition is first turned on.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

12. ABS Warning Light

This light monitors the Anti-Lock Brake System which is described elsewhere in this manual. This light will come on when the ignition key is turned to the ON position and may stay on for approximately 3 seconds. If this light remains on or comes on during driving, it indicates that the Anti-Lock portion of the brake system is not functioning and that service is required. See your authorized dealer immediately.

13. Engine Oil Pressure Indicator Light

This light indicates that the engine oil pressure has become too low. For a bulb check, this light will come on momentarily when the ignition is turned On. If the light turns on while driving, stop the vehicle and shut off the engine as soon as possible. Immediate service should be obtained. (See page 298 for more information.)

14. Tachometer

This gage measures engine revolutions-per-minute (rpm x 1000).

15. Gear Selector

The electronic gear selector display is self-contained within the instrument cluster. It displays the position of the automatic transmission shift lever, and the relation of each position to all other positions. For a good signal the display will place a box around the selected transmission range (PRND21). If the PRNDL displays only the characters PRND21 (no boxes) have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

16. Odometer

The odometer shows the total distance the vehicle has been driven.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

U.S. federal regulations require that upon transfer of vehicle ownership, the seller certify to the purchaser the correct mileage that the vehicle has been driven. Therefore, if the odometer reading is changed during repair or replacement, be sure to keep a record of the reading before and after the service so that the correct mileage can be determined.

17. Trip Odometer
The trip odometer shows individual trip mileage. To toggle between the odometer and the trip odometer, press the Odometer/Trip Odometer Button. To reset the Trip Odometer, press and hold the button while in trip mode, until the Trip Odometer resets.

If the vehicle diagnostic system determines that the fuel filler cap is loose, improperly installed, or damaged, GASCAP will be displayed in the instrument cluster. Tighten the fuel filler cap properly and press the odometer reset button to turn the GASCAP message off. If the problem continues, the message will appear the next time the vehicle is started.

18. Transmission Temperature Indicator
This light indicates that there is excessive transmission fluid temperature that might occur with severe usage such as trailer towing. If this light comes on, stop the vehicle and run the engine at idle or faster, with the transmission in NEUTRAL until the light goes off.

19. Does not Apply
This indicator is not available.

20. Door Ajar
The Door Ajar light will illuminate when the ignition is ON and any one of the passenger doors are opened.

NOTE: A chime will sound if the vehicle is rolling and a door has been opened.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

21. BRAKE System Warning Light
This light will light when the ignition key is turned to the ON position and will remain on for a few seconds. If the light stays on, it may be an indication that the parking brake has not been released, or there is a low brake fluid level. If the light remains on when the parking brake has been disengaged, and the fluid level is at the full mark on the master cylinder reservoir, it indicates a possible brake hydraulic system malfunction. In this case, the light will remain on until the condition has been corrected. If the parking brake is applied, the light will flash when the gear position is out of park for automatic transmissions.

If brake failure is indicated, immediate repair is necessary. Operating the vehicle in this condition is dangerous!

22. Low Washer Fluid Indicator
This light comes on when the washer fluid level falls below approximately 1/4 full. The light will remain on until fluid is added and ignition switch is cycled.

23. HeadLights On Indicator
Indicate when your headlights are on.

24. Malfunction Indicator Light

This light is part of an onboard diagnostic system which monitors the emissions and engine control system. If the vehicle is ready for emissions testing the light will come on when the ignition is first turned on and remain on, as a bulb check, until the engine is started. If the vehicle is not ready for emissions testing the light will come on when the ignition is first turned on and remain on for 15 seconds, then blink for 5 seconds, and remain on until the vehicle is started. If the bulb does not come on during starting, have the condition investigated promptly.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

If this light comes on and remains on while driving, it suggests a potential engine control problem and the need for system service.

Although your vehicle will usually be drivable and not need towing, see your dealer for service as soon as possible.

CAUTION!

Prolonged driving with the MIL on could cause damage to the engine control system. It also could affect fuel economy and driveability.

If the MIL is flashing, severe catalytic converter damage and power loss will soon occur. Immediate service is required.

25. Airbag Indicator

The indicator lights and remains lit for 6 to 8 seconds when the ignition is first turned ON. If the light does not come on when the ignition is first turned on, or the light stays on or comes on while driving, have the airbag system checked by an authorized dealer.

26. 4LO Indicator

Indicates when transfer case is in 4LO position.

27. SVC (Service) 4WD Indicator

The SVC 4WD lights will come on when the ignition key is turned to the ON position and will stay on for 2 seconds. If the light stays on or comes on during driving, it means that the 4WD system is not functioning properly and that service is required.

28. Cruise Light (Speed Control)

This indicator lights when the electronic speed control system is turned on.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

29. Cargo Lamp
The Cargo Lamp light will illuminate when the Cargo Lamp is activated from the headlight control switch, located below the headlight switch.

30. TOW/HAUL
The TOW/HAUL button is located at the end of the gear shift lever. This light will illuminate when the TOW/HAUL button has been selected.

31. 4LOCK Indicator
Indicates transfer case is in 4LOCK position.

32. Odometer/Trip Odometer Button
Press this button to toggle between the odometer and the trip odometer display. Holding the button in resets the trip odometer reading.

RADIO RECEPTION INFORMATION

AM Reception
AM radio signals usually travel longer distances than FM signals, especially at night. These longer distance AM signals can cause AM stations to interfere with one another. Noise from storms and power lines can also interfere with AM reception. Reducing the treble can reduce some of the noise.

FM Reception
FM Stereo signals produce better sound quality than AM signals. However, FM signals will only travel approximately 10 to 40 miles (16 to 64 km). Tall structures or hills can cause interference with FM signals causing the sound to cut out.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

ELECTRONIC DIGITAL CLOCK

The clock and radio each use the display panel built into the radio. A digital readout shows the frequency and/or time in hours and minutes (depending on your radio model) whenever the ignition switch is in the "ON" or "ACC" position.

When the ignition switch is in the "OFF" position, or when the radio frequency is being displayed, time keeping is accurately maintained.

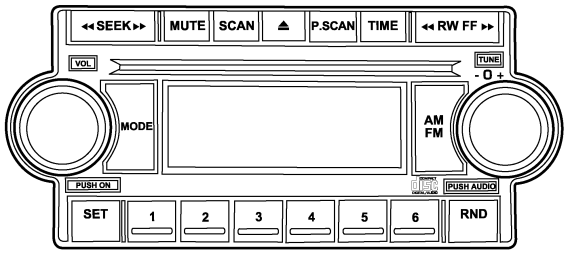
On the RAQ radio the time button alternates the location of the time and frequency on the display. On the REF only one of the two, time or frequency is displayed at a time.

Clock Setting Procedure

1. Press and hold the time button until the hours blink.
2. Adjust the hours by turning the right side Tune / Audio control.
3. After the hours are adjusted, press the right side Tune / Audio control to set the minutes.
4. Adjust the minutes using the right side Tune / Audio control.
5. To exit, press any button/knob or wait approximately 5 seconds.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

SALES CODE REF — AM/FM/CD (SINGLE DISC) RADIO WITH OPTIONAL HANDS FREE PHONE CAPABILITY



8118787a

Operating Instructions - Radio Mode

NOTE: The ignition switch must be in the ON or ACC position to operate the radio.

Power Switch/Volume Control (Rotary)
Press the ON/VOL control to turn the radio ON. Press the ON/VOL a second time to turn OFF the radio.

Electronic Volume Control
The electronic volume control turns continuously (360 degrees) in either direction without stopping. Turning the volume control to the right increases the volume and to the left decreases it.

When the audio system is turned on, the sound will be set at the same volume level as last played.

The volume can be turned down, but not up, when the audio system is off and the ignition is ON.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Mode Button (Radio Mode)
Press the mode button repeatedly to select between the CD player or Satellite Radio (if equipped).

SEEK Button (Radio Mode)
Press and release the SEEK button to search for the next listenable station in either AM/FM or Satellite (if equipped) mode. Press the right side of the button to seek up and the left side to seek down.The radio will remained tuned to the new station until you make another selection. Holding the button will bypass stations without stopping until you release it.

MUTE Button (Radio Mode)
Press the MUTE button to cancel the sound from the speakers. "MUTE" will be displayed. Press the MUTE button a second time and the sound from the speakers will return. Rotating the volume control, turning the radio ON /OFF, or turning ON/OFF the ignition, will cancel the MUTE feature.

NOTE: In Hands Free Phone (if equipped) mode, the MUTE button mutes the microphone.

SCAN Button (Radio Mode)
Pressing the SCAN button causes the tuner to search for the next listenable station, in either AM, FM or Satellite (if equipped) frequencies, pausing for 5 seconds at each listenable station before continuing to the next. To stop the search, press SCAN a second time.

PSCAN Button (Radio Mode)
Pressing the PSCAN button, causes the tuner to scan through preset stations, in either AM, FM or Satellite (if equipped) frequencies, pausing for 5 seconds at each preset station before continuing to the next. To stop the search, press PSCAN a second time.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

RW/FF (Radio Mode)
Pressing the rewind/fast forward button causes the tuner to search for the next frequency in the direction of the arrows. This feature operates in either AM, FM or Satellite (if equipped) frequencies.

TUNE Control (Radio Mode)
Turn the right side rotary control to increase or decrease the frequency.

AM/FM Button (Radio Mode)
Press the button to select AM or FM Modes.

Setting the Tone, Balance, and Fade
Press the rotary TUNE control and BASS will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to increase or decrease the Bass tones.

Press the rotary TUNE control a second time and MID will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to increase or decrease the Mid Range tones.

Press the rotary TUNE control a third time and TREBLE will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to increase or decrease the Treble tones.

Press the rotary TUNE control a fourth time and BAL will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to adjust the sound level from the right or left side speakers.

Press the rotary TUNE control a fifth time and FADE will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to adjust the sound level between the front and rear speakers.

Press the tune control again or wait 5 seconds and the radio will return to normal display.

SET Button (Radio Mode) To SET The Push-Button Memory
When you are receiving a station that you wish to commit to push-button memory, press the SET button. The symbol SET 1 will now show in the display window.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Select the button (1-6) you wish to lock onto this station and press and release that button. If a button is not selected within 5 seconds after pressing the SET button, the station will continue to play but will not be stored into push-button memory.

You may add a second station to each push-button by repeating the above procedure with this exception: Press the SET button twice and SET 2 will show in the display window. Each button can be set for SET 1 and SET 2 in both AM and FM. This allows a total of 12 AM,12 FM and 12 Satellite (if equipped) stations to be stored into push-button memory. The stations stored in SET 2 memory can be selected by pressing the push-button twice.

Every time a preset button is used a corresponding button number will be displayed.

Preset Buttons 1 - 6 (Radio Mode)
These buttons tune the Radio to the stations that you commit to push-button memory {12 AM, 12 FM, and 12 Satellite (if equipped) stations}.

Operation Instructions - CD Mode

NOTE: The ignition switch must be in the ON or ACC position to operate the radio.

Inserting The Compact Disc (Single CD Player)
Gently insert one CD into the CD player with the CD label facing up. The CD will automatically be pulled into the CD Player and the CD icon will illuminate on the radio display.

If the volume control is ON, the unit will switch to CD mode and begin to play. The display will show the track number and play time in minutes and seconds. Play will begin at the start of track one.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE:

- You may insert or eject a disc with the radio or ignition switch OFF.
- If you insert a disc with the ignition ON and the radio OFF, the CD will automatically be pulled into the CD Player and the display will show the time of day.

SEEK Button (CD Mode)
Press the right side of the SEEK button for the next track on the CD. Press the left side of the button to return to the beginning of the current track, or return to the beginning of the previous track if the CD is within the first 10 seconds of the current selection.

MUTE Button ((CD Mode)
Press the MUTE button to cancel the sound from the speakers. ″MUTE″ will be displayed. Press the MUTE button a second time and the sound from the speakers will return. Rotating the volume control or turning OFF the ignition will also return the sound from the speakers.

SCAN Button (CD Mode)
Press this button to play the first 10 seconds of each track. To stop the scan function, press the button a second time.

EJECT Button (CD Mode)
Press this button and the disc will unload and move to the entrance for easy removal. The unit will switch to the last selected mode.

If you do not remove the disc within 15 seconds, it will be reloaded. The radio mode will continue to appear.

TIME Button (CD Mode)
Press this button to change the display from elapsed CD playing time to time of day.

RW/FF (CD Mode)
Press and hold the FF (Fast Forward) and the CD player will begin to fast forward until FF is released. The RW (Reverse) button works in a similar manner.

NOTE: RND Button (Random Play Button) (CD Mode)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Press this button while the CD is playing to activate Random Play. This feature plays the selections on the compact disc in random order to provide an interesting change of pace.

Press the SEEK button to move to the next randomly selected track.

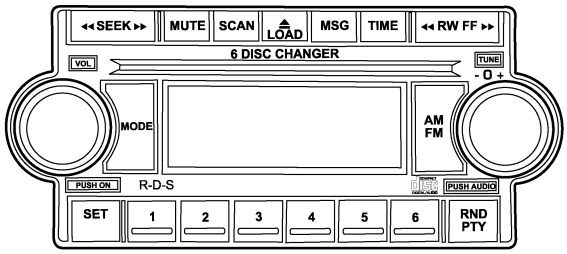
Press and hold the FF button to fast forward through the tracks. Release the FF button to stop the fast forward feature. If the RW button is pressed, the current track will reverse to the beginning of the track and begin playing.

Press the RDN button a second time to stop Random Play.

Operating Instructions - Hands Free Phone — If Equipped

Refer to the HANDS FREE PHONE (UConnect™) section of the Owner's Manual.

SALES CODE RAQ – AM/FM/CD (6-DISC) RADIO WITH OPTIONAL SATELLITE RADIO, HANDS FREE PHONE, AND VIDEO CAPABILITIES



8118786d

Operating Instructions - Radio Mode

NOTE: The ignition switch must be in the ON or ACC position to operate the radio.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Power Switch/Volume Control (Rotary)
Press the ON/VOL control to turn the radio ON. Press the ON/VOL a second time to turn OFF the radio.

Electronic Volume Control
The electronic volume control turns continuously (360 degrees) in either direction without stopping. Turning the volume control to the right increases the volume and to the left decreases it.

When the audio system is turned on, the sound will be set at the same volume level as last played.

The volume can be turned down, but not up, when the audio system is off and the ignition is ON.

Mode Button (Radio Mode)
Press the mode button repeatedly to select between the Radio, CD player, Hands Free Phone, Satellite, or Vehicle Entertainment System (VES) (if equipped).

SEEK Button (Radio Mode)
Press and release the SEEK button to search for the next station in either AM/FM or Satellite (if equipped) mode. Press the right side of the button to seek up and the left side to seek down.The radio will remained tuned to the new station until you make another selection. Holding the button and will bypass stations without stopping until you release it.

MUTE Button (Radio Mode)
Press the MUTE button to cancel the sound from the speakers. ″MUTE″ will be displayed. Press the MUTE button a second time and the sound from the speakers will return. Rotating the volume control or turning OFF the ignition will also return the sound from the speakers

NOTE: In Hands Free Phone (if equipped) mode, the MUTE button mutes the microphone.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

SCAN Button (Radio Mode)
Pressing the SCAN button causes the tuner to search for the next station, in either AM, FM or Satellite (if equipped) frequencies, pausing for 5 seconds at each listenable station before continuing to the next. Pressing the AM/FM button continues the search in the alternate frequency band. To stop the search, press SCAN a second time.

INFO Button (Radio Mode)
Press the INFO button for an RBDS station (one with call letters displayed). The radio will return a Radio Text message broadcast from an FM station (FM mode only).

RW/FF (Radio Mode)
Pressing the rewind/fast forward button causes the tuner to search for the next frequency in the direction of the arrows. This feature operates in either AM, FM or Satellite (if equipped) frequencies.

TUNE Control (Radio Mode)
Turn the right side rotary control to increase or decrease the frequency.

AM/FM Button (Radio Mode)
Press the button to select AM or FM Modes.

Setting the Tone, Balance, and Fade
Press the rotary TUNE control and BASS will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to increase or decrease the Bass tones.

Press the rotary TUNE control a second time and MID will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to increase or decrease the Mid Range tones.

Press the rotary TUNE control a third time and TREBLE will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to increase or decrease the Treble tones.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Press the rotary TUNE control a fourth time and BAL will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to adjust the sound level from the right or left side speakers.

Press the rotary TUNE control a fifth time and FADE will display. Turn the TUNE control to the right or left to adjust the sound level between the front and rear speakers.

Press the rotary TUNE control again to exit setting tone, balance and fade.

RDN/PTY Button (Radio Mode)
Pressing this button once will turn on the PTY mode for 5 seconds. If no action is taken during the 5 second time out the PTY icon will turn off. Pressing the PTY button within 5 seconds will allow the program format type to be selected. Many radio stations do not currently broadcast PTY information.

Toggle the PTY button to select the following format types:

Program Type	16 Digit-Character Display
No program type or undefined	None
News	News
Information	Information
Sports	Sports
Talk	Talk
Rock	Rock
Classic Rock	Classic_Rock
Adult Hits	Adult_Hits
Soft Rock	Soft_Rock
Top 40	Top_40
Country	Country
Oldies	Oldies
Soft	Soft
Nostalgia	Nostalgia

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Program Type	16 Digit-Character Display
Jazz	Jazz
Classical	Classical
Rhythm and Blues	Rhythm_and_Blues
Soft Rhythm and Blues	Soft_R_&_B
Foreign Language	Foreign_Language
Religious Music	Religious_Music
Religious Talk	Religious_Talk
Personality	Personality
Public	Public
College	College
Unassigned	
Weather	Weather

By pressing the SEEK button when the PTY icon is displayed, the radio will be tuned to the next frequency station with the same selected PTY name. The PTY function only operates when in the FM mode.

If a preset button is activated while in the PTY (Program Type) mode, the PTY mode will be exited and the radio will tune to the preset station.

Buttons 1 - 6 (Radio Mode)
These buttons tune the Radio to the stations that you commit to push-button memory {12AM, 12 FM, and 12 Satellite (if equipped) stations}.

Operation Instructions - (CD MODE For CD Audio Play)

NOTE: The ignition switch must be in the ON or ACC position to operate the radio.

NOTE: This Radio is capable of playing compact discs (CD), recordable compact discs (CD-R), rewritable compact discs (CD-RW) compact discs with MP3 tracks and multisession compact discs with CD and MP3 tracks.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Inserting Compact Disc(s)

CAUTION!
This CD player will accept 4 3/4 inch (12 cm) discs only. The use of other sized discs may damage the CD player mechanism.

You may eject a disc with the radio OFF.

If you insert a disc with the ignition ON and the radio OFF, the display will show the time of day. If you insert a disc with the ignition OFF, the display will show the time of day for about 5 seconds, then go out.

If you insert a disc with the ignition ON and the radio ON, the unit will switch from radio to CD mode and begin to play when you insert the disc. The display will show the disc number, the track number, and index time in minutes and seconds. Play will begin at the start of track 1.

SEEK Button (CD MODE For CD Audio Play)
Press the right side of the SEEK button for the next selection on the CD. Press the left side of the button to return to the beginning of the current selection, or return to the beginning of the previous selection if the CD is within the first 10 seconds of the current selection.

MUTE Button (CD MODE For CD Audio Play)
Press the MUTE button to cancel the sound from the speakers. "MUTE" will be displayed. Press the MUTE button a second time and the sound from the speakers will return. Rotating the volume control or turning OFF the ignition will also return the sound from the speakers.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

SCAN Button (CD MODE For CD Audio Play)
Press the Scan button to scan through each track on the CD currently playing.

LOAD/EJECT Button (CD Mode For CD Audio Play)

LOAD/ EJECT - Load

Press the LOAD/ EJECT button and the push-button with the corresponding number where the CD is being loaded. The radio will display PLEASE WAIT and prompt when to INSERT DISC. After the radio displays "LOAD DISC" insert the CD into the player.

Radio display will show "LOADING DISC" when the disc is loading.

LOAD / EJECT - Eject

Press the LOAD/ EJECT button and the push-button with the corresponding number where the CD was loaded and the disc will unload and move to the entrance for easy removal. Radio display will show "EJECTING DISC" when the disc is being ejected and prompt the user to remove the disc. Press and hold the LOAD/ EJECT button to eject all discs in the radio.

If you have ejected a disc and have not removed it within 15 seconds, it will be reloaded. If the CD is not removed, the radio will continue to play the non-removed CD. If the CD is removed and there are other CD's in the radio, the radio will play the next CD. If the CD is removed and there are no other CD's in the radio, the radio will remain in CD mode and display "NO DISC LOADED". The disc can be ejected with the radio and ignition OFF.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

TIME Button (CD MODE For CD Audio Play)
Press this button to change the display from a large CD playing time display and small clock time display to a large clock time display and small CD playing time display.

RW/FF (CD MODE For CD Audio Play)
Press FF (Fast Forward) once and the CD player will begin to fast forward until FF is pressed again or RW or another CD button is pressed. The RW (Reverse) button works in a similar manner.

TUNE Control (CD MODE For CD Audio Play)
Pressing the TUNE control allows the setting of the Tone, Fade, and Balance. See Radio Mode.

AM/FM Button (CD MODE For CD Audio Play)
Switches the Radio to the Radio mode.

RND/PTY Button (Random Play Button) (CD MODE For CD Audio Play)
Press this button while the CD is playing to activate Random Play. This feature plays the selections on the compact disc in random order to provide an interesting change of pace.

Press the SEEK button to move to the next randomly selected track.

Press and hold the FF button to fast forward through the tracks. Release the FF button to stop the fast forward feature. If the RW button is pressed, the current track will reverse to the beginning of the track and begin playing.

Press the RDN button a second time to stop Random Play.

BUTTONS 1 - 6 (CD MODE For CD Audio Play)
Selects disc positions 1 - 6 for Play/Load/Eject.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Notes On Playing MP3 Files

The radio can play MP3 files, however, acceptable MP3 file recording media and formats are limited. When writing MP3 files, pay attention to the following restrictions.

Supported media (disc types)
The MP3 file recording media supported by the radio are CD-ROM, CD-R and CD-RW.

Supported medium formats (file systems)
The medium formats supported by the radio are ISO 9660 Level 1 and Level 2 and includes the Joliet extension. When reading discs recorded using formats other than ISO 9660 Level 1 and Level 2, the radio may fail to read files properly and may be unable to play the file normally. UDF and Apple HFS formats are not supported.

The radio uses the following limits for file systems:

- Maximum number of directory levels: 15
- Maximum number of files: 255
- Maximum number of folders: 100
- Maximum number of characters in file/folder names:
  - Level 1: 12 (including a separator ″.″ and a 3-character extension)
  - Level 2: 31 (including a separator ″.″ and a 3-character extension)

Multisession disc formats are supported by the radio. Multisession discs may contain combinations of normal CD audio tracks and computer files (including MP3 files). Discs created with an option such as ″keep disc open after writing″ are most likely multisession discs. The use of multisession for CD audio or MP3 playback may result in longer disc loading times.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Supported MP3 file formats
The radio will recognize only files with the *.mp3 extension as MP3 files. Non-MP3 files named with the *.mp3 extension may cause playback problems. The radio is designed to recognize the file as an invalid MP3 and will not play the file.

When using the MP3 encoder to compress audio data to an MP3 file, the bit rate and sampling frequencies in the following table are supported. In addition, variable bit rates (VBR) are also supported. The majority of MP3 files use a 44.1 kHz sampling rate and a 192, 160, 128, 96 or VBR bit rates.

MPEG Specification	Sampling Frequency (kHz)	Bit rate (kbps)
MPEG-1 Audio Layer 3	48, 44.1, 32	320, 256, 224, 192, 160, 128, 112, 96, 80, 64, 56, 48, 40, 32
MPEG-2 Audio Layer 3	24, 22.05, 16	160, 128, 144, 112, 96, 80, 64, 56, 48, 40, 32, 24, 16, 8

ID3 Tag information for artist, song title and album title are supported for version 1 ID3 tags. ID3 version 2 is not supported by the radios.

Playlist files are not supported. MP3 Pro files are not supported.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Playback of MP3 files
When a medium containing MP3 data is loaded, the radio checks all files on the medium. If the medium contains a lot of folders or files, the radio will take more time to start playing the MP3 files.

Loading times for playback of MP3 files may be affected by the following:

- Media - CD-RW media may take longer to load than CD-R media
- Medium formats - Multisession discs may take longer to load than non-multisession discs
- Number of files and folders - Loading times will increase with more files and folders

To increase the speed of disc loading, it is recommended to use CD-R media and single-session discs. To create a single-session disc, enable the Disc at Once option before writing to the disc.

Operation Instructions - (CD Mode For MP3 Audio Play)

SEEK Button (CD Mode For MP3 Play)
Pressing the right side of the SEEK button plays the next MP3 File. Pressing the left side of the SEEK button plays the beginning of the MP3 file. Pressing the button within the first ten seconds plays the previous file.

LOAD/EJECT Button (CD Mode For MP3 Play)

LOAD/ EJECT - Load

Press the LOAD/ EJECT button and the push-button with the corresponding number where the CD is being loaded. The radio will display PLEASE WAIT and prompt when to INSERT DISC. After the radio displays ″LOAD DISC″ insert the CD into the player.

Radio display will show ″LOADING DISC″ when the disc is loading.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

LOAD / EJECT - Eject

Press the LOAD/ EJECT button and the push-button with the corresponding number where the CD was loaded and the disc will unload and move to the entrance for easy removal. Radio display will show ″EJECTING DISC″ when the disc is being ejected and prompt the user to remove the disc. Press and hold the LOAD/ EJECT button to eject all discs in the radio.

If you have ejected a disc and have not removed it within 15 seconds, it will be reloaded. If the CD is not removed, the radio will continue to play the non-removed CD. If the CD is removed and there are other CD's in the radio, the radio will play the next CD. If the CD is removed and there are no other CD's in the radio, the radio will remain in CD mode and display ″NO DISC LOADED.″

INFO Button (CD Mode For MP3 Play)

Press and INFO button while playing MP3 disc. The radio scrolls through the following TAG information: Song Title, Artist, File Name, and Folder Name (if available).

Press the INFO button once more to return to ″elapsed time″ priority mode.

Press and hold the INFO button while in the message display priority mode or elapsed time display priority mode will display the song title for each file.

RW/FF (CD Mode For MP3 Play)

Press the FF side of the button to move forward through the MP3 selection.

TUNE Control (CD Mode For MP3 Play)

Pressing the TUNE Control allows the adjustment of Tone, Balance, and Fade.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

AM/FM Button (CD Mode For MP3 Play)
Switches back to Radio mode.

RND/ PTY Button (CD Mode For MP3 Play)
Pressing this button plays files randomly.

SET/DIR Button (CD Mode For MP3 Play)
Press the SET/DIR Button to display folders, when playing an MP3 discs that have a file/folder structure. Turn the TUNE control to display available folders or move through available folders. Press the TUNE control to select a folder.

Buttons 1 - 6 (CD Mode For MP3 Play)
Selects disc positions 1 - 6 for Play/Load/Eject.

Operating Instructions - Hands Free Phone (If Equipped)
Refer to Hands Free Phone section of the Owner's Manual.

Operating Instructions - Satellite Radio Mode (If Equipped)
Refer to the Satellite Radio section of the Owner's Manual.

Operating Instructions - Video Entertainment System (VES®) (If Equipped)
Refer to separate Video Entertainment System (VES®) Guide.

SATELLITE RADIO — IF EQUIPPED

Satellite radio uses direct satellite to receiver broadcasting technology to provide clear digital sound, coast to coast. The subscription service provider is Sirius™ Satellite Radio. This service offers up to 100 channels of music, sports, news, entertainment, and programming for children, directly from its satellites and broadcasting studios.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

System Activation

To activate your Sirius Satellite Radio service, call the toll-free number 888-539-7474, or visit the Sirius web site at www.sirius.com. Please have the following information available when activating your system:

1. The Electronic Serial Number/Sirius Identification Number (ESN/SID).
2. Credit card information.
3. Your Vehicle Identification Number.

Electronic Serial Number/Sirius Identification Number (ESN/SID)

The Electronic Serial Number/Sirius Identification Number is needed to activate your Sirius Satellite Radio system. To access the ESN/SID, refer to the following steps:

ESN/SID Access With REF Radios

With the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY position and the radio OFF, press the Eject or CD Eject (depending on the radio type) and Time buttons simultaneously for 3 seconds. The first four digits of the twelve-digit ESN/SID number will be displayed. Press the SEEK UP button to display the next four digits. Continue to press the SEEK UP button until all twelve ESN/SID digits have been displayed. The SEEK DOWN will page down until the first four digits are displayed. The radio will exit the ESN/SID mode when any other button is pushed, the ignition is turned OFF, or 5 minutes has passed since any button was pushed.

ESN/SID Access With RAQ Radios

With the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY position and the radio OFF, press the CD Eject and TIME buttons simultaneously for 3 seconds. All twelve ESN/SID numbers will be displayed. The radio will exit the ESN/SID

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

mode when any other button is pushed, the ignition is turned OFF, or 5 minutes has passed since any button was pushed.

Selecting Satellite Mode in REF Radios

Press the MODE button repeatedly until ″S A″ appears in the display. A CD may remain in the radio while in the Satellite radio mode.

Selecting Satellite Mode in RAQ Radios

Press the MODE button repeatedly until the word ″SIRIUS″ appears in the display. These radios will also display the following:

- After 3 seconds, the current channel name and channel number will be displayed for 5 seconds.
- The current program type and channel number will then be displayed for 5 seconds.
- The current channel number will then be displayed until an action occurs.

A CD may remain in the radio while in the Satellite radio mode.

Selecting a Channel

Press and release the SEEK or TUNE buttons to search for the next channel. Press the top of the button to search up and the bottom of the button to search down. Holding the TUNE button causes the radio to bypass channels until the button is released.

Press and release the SCAN button (if equipped) to automatically change channels every 7 seconds. The radio will pause on each channel for 7 seconds before moving on to the next channel. The word ″SCAN″ will appear in the display between each channel change. Press the SCAN button a second time to stop the search.

NOTE: Channels that may contain objectionable content can be blocked. Contact Sirius Customer Care at 888-539-7474 to discuss options for channel blocking or unblocking. Please have your ESN/SID information available.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Storing and Selecting Pre-Set Channels

In addition to the 10 AM and 10 FM pre-set stations, you may also commit 10 satellite stations to push button memory. These satellite channel pre-set stations will not erase any AM or FM pre-set memory stations. Follow the memory pre-set procedures that apply to your radio.

Using the PTY (Program Type) Button (if equipped)

Follow the PTY button instructions that apply to your radio.

PTY Button ″SCAN″

When the desired program type is obtained, press the ″SCAN″ button within five seconds. The radio will play 7 seconds of the selected channel before moving to the next channel of the selected program type. Press the ″SCAN″ button a second time to stop the search.

NOTE: Pressing the ″SEEK″ or ″SCAN″ button while performing a music type scan will change the channel by one and stop the search. Pressing a pre-set memory button during a music type scan, will call up the memory channel and stop the search.

PTY Button ″SEEK″

When the desired program is obtained, press the ″SEEK″ button within five seconds. The channel will change to the next channel that matches the program type selected.

Satellite Antenna

To ensure optimum reception on vehicles available with a luggage rack, do not place items on the roof around the rooftop antenna location. Metal objects placed within the line of sight of the antenna will cause decreased performance. Larger luggage items should be placed as far forward as possible. Do not place items directly on or above the antenna.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

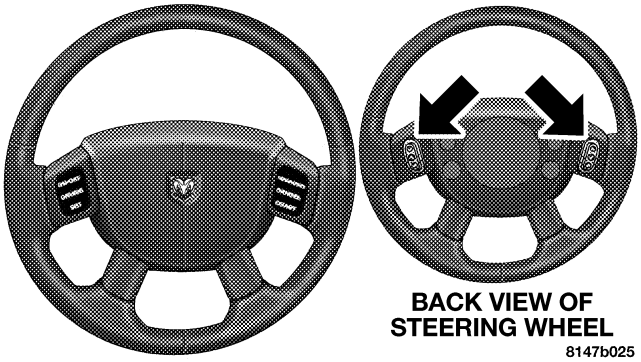
Reception Quality

Satellite reception may be interrupted due to one of the following reasons.

- The vehicle is parked in an underground parking structure or under a physical obstacle.
- Dense tree coverage may interrupt reception.
- Driving under wide bridges or along tall buildings can cause intermittent reception.
- Placing objects over or too close to the antenna can cause signal blockage.

REMOTE SOUND SYSTEM CONTROLS — IF EQUIPPED

The remote sound system controls are located on the rear surface of the steering wheel. Reach behind the wheel to access the switches.



BACK VIEW OF STEERING WHEEL

8147b025

The right hand control is a rocker type switch with a push button in the center. Pressing the top of the switch will increase the volume and pressing the bottom of the switch will decrease the volume.

The button located in the center of the right hand control will switch modes to Radio or CD.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The left hand control is a rocker type switch with a push button in the center. The function of the left hand control is different depending on which mode you are in.

The following describes the left hand control operation in each mode.

Radio Operation

Pressing the top of the switch will SEEK up for the next listenable station and pressing the bottom of the switch will SEEK down for the next listenable station.

The button located in the center of the left hand control will tune to the next pre-set station that you have programmed in the radio pre-set push-buttons.

CD Player

Pressing the top of the switch once will go to the next track on the CD. Pressing the bottom of the switch once will go to the beginning of the current track or to the beginning of the previous track if it is within one second after the current track begins to play.

If you press the switch up or down twice it plays the second track, three times, it will play the third, etc.

The button in the center of the left hand switch changes CD's on the 6–Disc in-dash CD changer radio. This button does not function for all other radios.

COMPACT DISC MAINTENANCE

To keep the compact discs in good condition, take the following precautions:

1. Handle the disc by its edge; avoid touching the surface.

2. If the disc is stained, clean the surface with a soft cloth, wiping from center to edge.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Do not apply paper or tape to the disc; avoid scratching the disc.

4. Do not use solvents such as benzine, thinner, cleaners, or antistatic sprays.

5. Store the disc in its case after playing.

6. Do not expose the disc to direct sunlight.

7. Do not store the disc where temperatures may become too high.

NOTE: If you experience difficulty in playing a particular disc, it may be damaged (i.e. scratched, reflective coating removed, a hair, moisture or dew on the disc) oversized, or have theft protection encoding. Try a known good disc before considering disc player service.

RADIO OPERATION AND CELLULAR PHONES

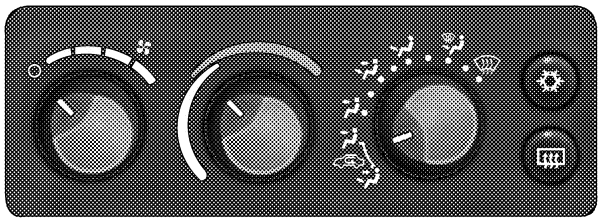
Under certain conditions, the cellular phone being On in your vehicle can cause erratic or noisy performance from your radio. This condition may be lessened or eliminated by relocating the cellular phone antenna. This condition is not harmful to the radio. If your radio performance does not satisfactorily "clear" by the repositioning of the antenna, it is recommended that the radio volume be turned down or off during cellular phone operation.

CLIMATE CONTROLS

The controls for the heating and ventilation system in this vehicle consist of a series of rotary knobs. These comfort controls can be set to obtain desired interior conditions.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Air Conditioning And Heater

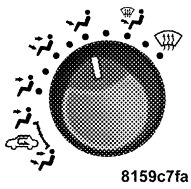


8159c7f0

Air Conditioning And Heater Operation

To turn on the Air Conditioning, set the fan control at any speed and press the snowflake button located at the right of the control panel. Conditioned air will be directed through the outlets selected by the mode control. A light in the snowflake button shows that the air conditioning is on. Press the button a second time to turn the air conditioning off.

Slight changes in engine speed or power may be noticed when the air conditioning compressor is on. This is a normal occurrence as the compressor will cycle on and off to maintain comfort and increase fuel economy.



8159c7fa

Mode Control

The mode control (at the right of the control panel) can be set in any of the following positions:

NOTE: To improve your selection choices, the system allows you to operate at intermediate positions between the major modes. These intermediate positions are identified by the small dots.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Recirculation Modes (Panel or Bi-Level)

811b550b

Select the recirculation modes when the outside air contains dust, odors, high humidity, or if rapid cooling is desired. This feature allows for recirculation of interior air only. Air flows through the panel outlets in this mode.

Panel (Fresh Air Modes)

Outside air flows through the outlets located in the instrument panel.

Bi-Level

Outside air flows through the outlets located in the instrument panel and at the floor.

Floor

Outside air flows primarily through the floor outlets located under the instrument panel.

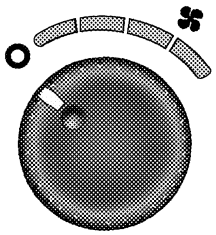
Mix

Outside air flows in equal proportions through the floor and defroster outlets.

Defrost

Outside air is primarily directed to the windshield through the defroster outlets located at the base of the windshield, and the demister outlets located at the edge of each side of the instrument panel.

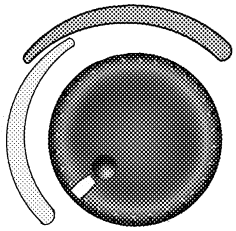
Blower Control


80a01359

The rotary knob on the left of the control panel is the blower control. Turn the knob clockwise to one of the four positions to obtain the blower speed you desire.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Temperature Control



80a0135a

The rotary knob at the center of the control panel controls the temperature of the interior air. You can choose your degree of comfort by rotating the knob. The coldest temperature setting is to the extreme left (blue region) and the warmest setting is to the extreme right (red region) of the rotation.

Circulation

The cab is designed with features to promote outside air circulation. There are grilles in the cab back panel. These are air exhausters that provide the means for regular exchange of cab air.

Side window demisters direct air flow specifically to the window glass to help prevent interior fogging of the glass. They are located in the extreme outside upper edges of the instrument panel. The demisters also provide extra air ducts for circulation. They are in operation whenever the Floor, Mix or Defrost modes are in use.

NOTE: When you turn off the engine you may hear a hissing sound from under the hood for a short period of time. This is a normal condition that occurs if the air conditioning system has been on. It is not an indication of a problem with the air conditioning system.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Operating Tips

Fast Cooldown

For a fast cooldown, turn the blower fan rotary knob to the extreme right position, turn the mode control to the panel fresh position, press the snowflake button to turn on the air conditioning, and drive with the windows open for the first few minutes. Once the hot air has been expelled, close the windows and turn the mode selector to the Recirculation Panel Mode or Recirculation Mode Bi-level position. When a comfortable condition has been reached, choose a mode position and adjust the temperature control knob and blower speed as necessary to maintain comfort. For high humidity conditions it may be necessary to remain in the Recirculation mode to maintain comfort.

Window Fogging

Windows will fog on the inside when the humidity inside the vehicle is high. This often occurs in mild or cool temperatures when it's rainy or humid. In most cases turning on the Air-conditioning (pressing the snowflake button) will clear the fog. Adjust the temperature control, air direction and blower speed to maintain comfort.

As the temperature gets colder it may be necessary to direct air onto the windshield by using MIX Mode position on the control. Adjust the temperature control and blower speed to maintain comfort. High blower speeds will reduce fogging. Interior fogging on the windshield can be quickly removed by selecting the defrost mode.

Regular cleaning of the inside of the windows with a non-filming cleaning solution (vinegar and water works very well) will help prevent contaminates (cigarette smoke, perfumes, etc.) from sticking to the windows. Contaminates on the inside of windows can increase the rate of window fogging.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Summer Operation

Air conditioned vehicles must be protected with a high quality antifreeze coolant during summer to provide proper corrosion protection and to raise the boiling point of the coolant for protection against overheating. A 50% concentration of engine coolant to distilled water is recommended. See coolant section of Owner's manual.

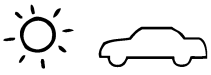
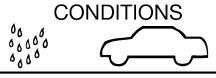
When using the air conditioner in extremely heavy traffic in hot weather especially when towing a trailer, additional engine cooling may be required. If this situation is encountered, operate the transmission in a lower gear. When stopped in heavy traffic, it may be necessary to shift into NEUTRAL and depress the accelerator slightly for fast idle operation.

Winter Operation

When operating the system during the winter months, make sure the air intake, located directly in front of the windshield, is free of ice, slush, snow, or other obstructions.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Operation Tips Chart

WEATHER	CONTROL SETTINGS
HOT WEATHER AND VEHICLE INTERIOR IS VERY HOT 	Start the vehicle, open the windows and turn the blower control knob to the high position (full clockwise). Set Mode control knob at or between and . Set temperature control to full cold and press the button on. After the hot air has been expelled, close the windows and turn the mode control knob to the setting (counterclockwise) at either or , or press the button (if so equipped). Once comfortable, choose a mode position and adjust temperature control and blower speed as necessary for comfort.
WARM WEATHER	If sunny, set the Mode control at or near and press the button on. If cloudy or dark, set the Mode control at or near . No is necessary.
COOL OR COLD HUMID CONDITIONS 	If sunny, set the Mode control at or between and , then press the button on. If cloudy or dark set the Mode control at or near . No is necessary.
COLD DRY CONDITIONS	In cloudy or dark weather set the Mode control at or near . If sunny, set the Mode control at or between and and for snowy or very cold weather requiring extra heat to the windshield, use .
WINDOW FOGGING	In most cases turning on the Air-Conditioning (press the button) will clear the fog, then adjust temperature control, air direction and blower speed to maintain comfort. As it gets colder it may be necessary to direct air onto the windshield. If so, set the Mode control at or and adjust temperature control and blower speed to maintain comfort. Higher blower speeds will reduce fogging. 811b870c

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

REAR WINDOW DEFROSTER – IF EQUIPPED

CAUTION!

Use care when washing the inside of the rear window to prevent damage to heating elements. Use a soft cloth and a mild washing solution, wiping parallel to the heating elements. Also, keep all objects a safe distance from the window to prevent damaging the heating elements.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STARTING AND OPERATING

CONTENTS

■ Starting Procedures 196
- □ Manual Transmission 196
- □ Automatic Transmission 196
- □ Normal Starting 197
- □ Engine Block Heater — If Equipped 198

■ Automatic Transmission 199
- □ Automatic Transmission 199

■ Four-Wheel Drive Operation 206
- □ NV 233 Transfer Case Operating Information/Precautions 206
- □ Shifting Procedure - NV233 Transfer Case 210
- □ NV244 Transfer Case Operating Information / Precautions 212
- □ Shifting Procedure - NV244 Transfer Case 216

■ Limited-Slip Rear Axle Differential— If Equipped 218

■ Parking Brake 219

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

■ Brake System 221
□ Rear Wheel Anti-Lock Brake System — (If Equipped) 221
□ Four-Wheel Anti-Lock Brake System — If Equipped 222
■ Power Steering 223
■ Rocking The Vehicle 224
■ Tire Safety Information 224
□ Tire Markings 224
□ Tire Identification Number (TIN) 228
□ Tire Loading And Tire Pressure 229
■ Tires—General Information 233
□ Tire Pressure 233
□ Tire Inflation Pressures 234
□ Radial-Ply Tires 236
□ Compact Spare Tire — If Equipped 237
□ Limited Use Spare — If Equipped 238
□ Tire Spinning 238
□ Tread Wear Indicators 239
□ Replacement Tires 240
□ Alignment And Balance 241
■ Supplemental Tire Pressure Information 241
■ Tire Chains 242
■ Snow Tires 243
■ Tire Rotation Recommendations 244
■ Fuel Requirements 245
□ Reformulated Gasoline 246

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- □ Gasoline/Oxygenate Blends 246
- □ MMT In Gasoline 246
- □ Materials Added To Fuel 247
- □ Adding Fuel 247
- □ Fuel System Cautions 249
- □ Carbon Monoxide Warnings 250

■ Catalytic Converter 251

■ Vehicle Loading 252
- □ Certification Label 252
- □ Curb Weight 254
- □ Loading 254

■ Trailer Towing 256
- □ Definitions 256
- □ Trailer And Tongue Weight 258
- □ Gross Combined Vehicle Weight Rating (GCWR) .259
- □ Trailer Towing—Hitches 259
- □ Trailer Towing Information (Maximum Trailer Weight Ratings) 260
- □ Trailer Towing Requirements 260
- □ Trailer Tow Wiring 261
- □ Cooling System Tips—Trailer Towing 262

■ Snowplow 263
- □ Dodge Dakota Models 263

■ Recreational Towing (Behind Motorhome, Etc.) . .264
- □ Recreational Towing 2WD Models 264
- □ Recreational Towing 4WD Models 265

■ Traction 269

■ Equipment Identification Plate 269

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

STARTING PROCEDURES

The starter should not be operated for more than 15 second intervals. Waiting a few seconds between such intervals will protect the starter from overheating.

Manual Transmission

Apply the parking brake, place the gearshift control lever in NEUTRAL and depress clutch pedal to the floor before starting the vehicle. This vehicle is equipped with a clutch interlocking ignition system. It will not start unless the clutch is depressed.

Automatic Transmission

Start the engine with the shift lever in NEUTRAL or PARK position. Apply the brake before shifting to any driving range.

WARNING!

Do not attempt to push or tow your vehicle to get it started. Vehicles equipped with an automatic transmission cannot be started this way. Unburned fuel could enter the catalytic converter and once the engine has started, ignite and damage the converter and vehicle. If the vehicle has a discharged battery, booster cables may be used to obtain a start from a booster battery or the battery in another vehicle. This type of start can be dangerous if done improperly. See section 6 of this manual for the proper jump starting procedures and follow them carefully.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Normal Starting

Normal starting of either a warm or cold engine is obtained without pumping or depressing the accelerator pedal. Turn the key to the START position and release when the engine starts. If the engine fails to start within 10 seconds, turn the key to the OFF position, wait 5 seconds, then repeat the starting procedure.

If Engine Fails To Start

If the engine fails to start after you have followed the Normal Starting procedure, it may be flooded. Push the accelerator pedal all the way to the floor and hold it there while cranking the engine. This should clear any excess fuel in case the engine is flooded.

CAUTION!

To prevent damage to the starter, do not crank the engine for more than 15 seconds at a time. Wait 10 to 15 seconds before trying again.

If the engine has been flooded, it may start to run, but not have enough power to continue running when the key is released. If this occurs, continue cranking with the accelerator pedal pushed all the way to the floor. Release the accelerator pedal and the key once the engine is running smoothly.

If the engine shows no sign of starting after two 15 second periods of cranking with the accelerator pedal held to the floor, the Normal Starting procedure should be repeated.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

Never pour fuel or other flammable liquid into the throttle body air inlet opening in an attempt to start the vehicle. This could result in flash fire causing serious personal injury.

After Starting

The idle speed is automatically controlled on fuel injected engines and will decrease as the engine warms up.

CAUTION!

Long periods of engine idling can cause excessive exhaust temperatures which can damage your vehicle. Do not leave your vehicle unattended with the engine running.

WARNING!

Do not leave children or animals inside parked vehicles in hot weather. Interior heat build up may cause serious injury or death.

Engine Block Heater — If Equipped

The engine block heater warms engine coolant and permits quicker starts in cold weather. Connect the cord to a standard 110-115 volt AC electrical outlet with a grounded, three wire extension cord.

The engine block heater cord is located at the right front of the engine compartment for all engine applications.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

Remember to disconnect the cord before driving. Damage to the 110-115 volt electrical cord could cause electrocution.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Automatic Transmission

The electronic PRNDL on the instrument cluster indicates the transmission gear selected. The selector lever is mounted on the right side of the steering column. To drive, move the selector lever from Park or Neutral to the desired drive position. Pull selector lever toward you when shifting into Reverse, Second, First or Park, or when shifting out of Park.

Brake/Transmission Interlock System

This system prevents you from moving the gear shift out of Park and into any gear unless the brake pedal is pressed. This system is active only while the ignition switch is in the ON position. Always depress the **brake pedal first,** before moving the gear selector out of PARK.

Gear Ranges

DO NOT race the engine when shifting from Park or Neutral position into another gear range.

"P" Park

Supplements parking brake by locking the transmission. Engine can be started in this range. Never use Park while vehicle is in motion. Apply parking brake when leaving vehicle in this range. Always apply parking brake first, then place selector in Park position.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

Your vehicle could move and injure you and others if it is not completely in P (Park). Check by trying to move the gearshift lever back and forth without first pulling the lever toward you, after you have set it in P (Park). Make sure it is in Park before leaving the vehicle.

WARNING!

Never use Park position on an automatic transmission as a substitute for the parking brake. Always apply parking brake fully when parked to guard against vehicle movement and possible injury or damage.

WARNING!

It is dangerous to shift the selector lever out of "P" or "N" if the engine speed is higher than idle speed. If your foot is not firmly on the brake pedal, the vehicle could accelerate quickly forward or in reverse. You could lose control of the vehicle and hit someone or something. Only shift into gear when the engine is idling normally and when your right foot is firmly on the brake pedal.

"R" Reverse

Use this range only after the vehicle has come to a complete stop.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

"N" Neutral
Shift to Neutral when vehicle is standing for prolonged periods with engine running. Engine may be started in this range. Set the parking brake if you must leave the vehicle.

"D" Drive
For most city and highway driving.

"2" Second
For driving slowly in heavy city traffic or on mountain roads where more precise speed control is desirable. Use it also when climbing long grades, and for engine braking when descending moderately steep grades. To prevent excessive engine speed do not exceed 45 miles per hour (72 km/h) in this range.

"1" First
For driving up very steep hills and for engine braking at low speeds 25 mph (40 km/h) or less when going down hill. To prevent excessive engine speed do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h) in this range.

Overdrive Operation
The overdrive automatic transmission contains an electronically controlled fourth and fifth (if equipped) speed (Overdrive). The transmission will automatically shift from Drive to Overdrive if the following conditions are present:

- the transmission selector is in Drive;
- the engine coolant has reached normal operating temperature;
- vehicle speed is above approximately 30 mph (48 km/h);
- the "TOW/HAUL" switch has not been activated;

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

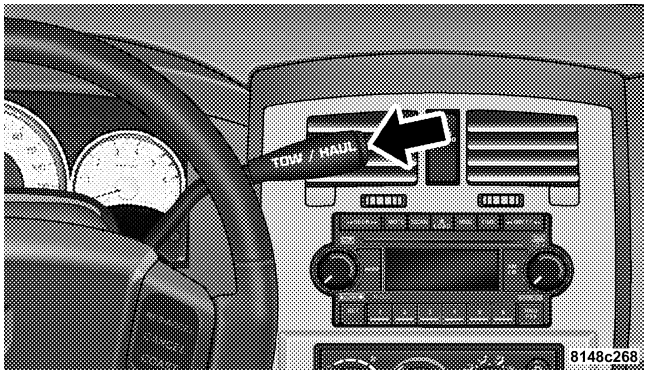
- transmission has reached normal operating temperature.

NOTE: If the vehicle is started in extremely cold temperatures, the transmission may not shift into Overdrive and will automatically select the most desirable gear for operation at this temperature. Normal operation will resume when the transmission fluid temperature has risen to a suitable level. Refer also to the Note under torque converter clutch, later in this section.

If the transmission temperature gets extremely hot, the transmission will automatically select the most desirable gear for operation at this temperature. If the transmission temperature becomes hot enough the TRANS TEMP light may illuminate and the transmission may downshift out of Overdrive until the transmission cools down. After cooldown, the transmission will resume normal operation.

The transmission will downshift from Overdrive to Drive if the accelerator pedal is fully depressed at vehicle speeds above approximately 35 mph (56 km/h).

When To Use "TOW/HAUL" Mode



When driving in hilly areas, towing a trailer, carrying a heavy load, etc., and frequent transmission shifting occurs, press the "TOW/HAUL" button. This will improve

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

performance and reduce the potential for transmission overheating or failure due to excessive shifting. When operating in "TOW/HAUL" mode, 5th gear (if equipped) is disabled and 2-3 and 3-4 shift patterns are modified. Shifts into Overdrive (4th gear) are allowed during steady cruise (for improved fuel economy) and automatic closed-throttle downshifts to 3rd gear (for improved braking) will occur during steady braking.

The "TOW/HAUL" light will illuminate in the instrument cluster to indicate when the switch has been activated. Pressing the switch a second time restores normal operation. If the "TOW/HAUL" mode is desired, the button must be pressed each time the engine is started.

Torque Converter Clutch

A feature designed to improve fuel economy is included in all automatic transmissions. A clutch within the torque converter engages automatically at a calibrated speed at light throttle. It engages at higher speeds under heavier acceleration. This may result in a slightly different feeling or response during normal operation in high gear. When the vehicle speed drops below a calibrated speed, or during acceleration, the clutch automatically and smoothly disengages. The feature is operational in Overdrive and in Drive.

NOTE: The torque converter clutch will not engage until the transmission fluid and engine coolant are warm [usually after 1-3 miles (1.6 - 4.8 km) of driving]. Because the engine speed is higher when the torque converter clutch is not engaged, it may seem as if the transmission is not shifting into Overdrive when cold. This is normal. Pressing the"TOW/HAUL" button, when the transmission is sufficiently warm, will demonstrate that the transmission is able to shift into and out of Overdrive.

NOTE: If the vehicle has not been driven in several days, the first few seconds of operation after shifting the

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

transmission into gear may seem sluggish. This is due to the fluid partially draining from the torque converter into the transmission. This condition is normal and will not cause damage to the transmission. The torque converter will refill within five seconds of shifting from Park into any other gear position.

Manual Transmission — 6-Speed

NOTE: The parking brake should be engaged before leaving the vehicle, especially on an incline.

This model is equipped with a clutch interlocking ignition system. The clutch pedal must be fully depressed to start the vehicle.

Fully depress the clutch pedal before shifting gears. As you release the clutch pedal, lightly depress the accelerator pedal. When launching a stationary vehicle, keep the engine speed low until the clutch is fully engaged.

NOTE: Damage to the clutch can result from starting in 2nd or 3rd gear with a loaded vehicle. Use each gear in numerical order – do not skip a gear.

When shifting from 5th to 6th gear, do not apply excessive knob load toward the Reverse gear gate, as you may overpower Reverse crash-through load and unintentionally clash into Reverse gear. Also, when shifting from 6th to 5th gear, excessive knob load toward the Reverse gear gate will result in blocking of the shift.

To shift into Reverse, come to a complete stop. Depress the clutch and pause briefly to allow the gear train to stop. Reverse has a ″crash-through″ lockout feature. In order to get into the reverse gate you should start in neutral 3/4 and move rapidly into the reverse gate in one swift motion. If you move slowly toward reverse you will encounter a very high load which makes it difficult to enter the gate.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Never drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal, or attempt to hold the vehicle on a hill with the clutch pedal partially engaged, as this will cause abnormal wear on the clutch.

Recommended Shift Speeds

To use your manual transmission for fuel economy it should be upshifted as listed below. Shift at the vehicle speeds listed for acceleration. Earlier upshifts during cruise conditions (relatively steady speeds) will result in increased fuel economy, and may be used as indicated.

Higher upshift speeds may be used to obtain a desired acceleration rate.

6 Speed Manual Transmission Shift Speed in mph (km/h)

Engine	Model	Axle	Acceleration Rate	1 to 2	2 to 3	3 to 4	4 to 5	5 to 6
3.7L	ALL	3.21 & 3.55	ACCEL & CRUISE	15 (24) 10 (16)	24 (39) 19 (31)	34 (55) 27 (44)	47 (76) 37 (60)	56 (90) 41 (66)
4.7L	All	3.21 & 3.55	ACCEL & CRUISE	15 (24)	25 (40)	40 (65)	45 (72)	50 (81)

5

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Downshifting

Moving from a high gear down to a lower gear is recommended to preserve brakes when driving down steep hills. In addition, downshifting at the right time provides better acceleration when you desire to resume speed. For acceleration at speeds less than 20 mph (30 km/h), 2nd gear is recommended.

CAUTION!

When descending a hill, be very careful to downshift one gear at a time to prevent overspeeding the engine which can cause valve damage.

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE OPERATION

NV 233 Transfer Case Operating Information/Precautions

The NV233 is an electric shift transfer case and is operated by the 4WD Control Switch (Transfer Case Switch), which is located on the instrument panel.

The NV233 transfer case provides 4 mode positions: 2 (rear) wheel drive high range, 4 wheel drive high range, 4 wheel drive low range, and neutral.

The NV233 transfer case is designed to be driven in the 2 wheel drive position (2WD) for normal street and highway conditions (dry hard surfaced roads).

When additional traction is required, the transfer case 4HI and 4LO positions can be used to lock the front and rear driveshafts together and force the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. This is accomplished by rotating the 4WD Control Switch to the desired

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

position - see Shifting Procedure section for specific shifting instructions. The 4HI and 4LO positions are designed for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Driving in the 4HI and 4LO positions on dry hard surfaced roads may cause increased tire wear and damage to the driveline components.

The transfer case Neutral (N) position is selected by depressing the recessed button located on the lower left hand corner of the 4WD Control Switch.

NOTE: The transfer case Neutral (N) position is to be used for recreational towing only. See Recreational Towing section for specific procedures on shifting into and out of Neutral (N).

Transfer Case Position Indicator Lights
Transfer case position indicator lights are located on the instrument cluster. If there is no indicator light on or flashing the transfer case position is two-wheel drive (2WD). If the indicator light is on the desired position (4HI or 4LO) has been obtained.

If One or More Shift Requirements are not Met

1. An indicator light will flash.
2. The transfer case **will not** shift.

NOTE: Before retrying a selection, make certain that all the necessary requirements for selecting a new transfer case position have been met. To retry the selection, turn the control knob back to the current position, wait five (5) seconds, and retry selection. To find the shift requirements, refer to the "Shifting Procedure" for your transfer case, located in this section of the owner's manual.

The "SVC 4WD" warning light monitors the electric shift 4WD system. If this light remains on after engine start up

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

or illuminates during driving, it means that the 4WD system is not functioning properly and that service is required.

WARNING!

Always engage the parking brake when powering down the vehicle if the "SVC 4WD" light is illuminated. Not engaging the parking brake may allow the vehicle to roll which may cause personal injury.

NOTE: Do not attempt to make a shift while only the front or rear wheels are spinning. The NV233 transfer case is not equipped with a synchronizer and therefore the front and rear driveshaft speeds must be equal for the shift to take place. Shifting while only the front or rear wheels are spinning can cause damage to the transfer case.

When operating your vehicle in 4LO, the engine speed is approximately three times that of the 2WD or 4HI positions at a given road speed. Take care not to overspeed the engine and do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

Proper operation of 4 wheel drive vehicles depends on tires of equal size, type and circumference on each wheel. Any difference in tire size can cause damage to the transfer case.

Because 4 wheel drive provides improved traction, there is a tendency to exceed safe turning and stopping speeds. Do not go faster than road conditions permit.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

You or others could be injured if you leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the Neutral (N) position without first fully engaging the parking brake. The transfer case Neutral (N) position disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain and will allow the vehicle to move regardless of the transmission position. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.

For additional information on the appropriate use of each transfer case mode position see the information below:

2WD
Rear Wheel Drive High Range - Normal street and highway driving. Dry hard surfaced roads.

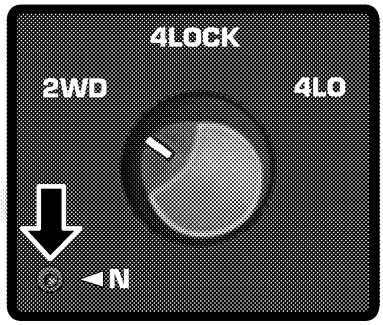
4HI
4 Wheel Drive High Range - Locks the front and rear driveshafts together. Forces the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. Additional traction for loose, slippery road surfaces only.

4LO
4 Wheel Drive Low Range - Low speed 4 wheel drive. Locks the front and rear driveshafts together. Forces the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. Additional traction and maximum pulling power for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

N
Neutral - Disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain. To be used for flat towing behind another vehicle. See Recreational Towing for more information.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Shifting Procedure - NV233 Transfer Case



8148c26c

NOTE: If any of the requirements to select a new transfer case position have not been met, the transfer case will not shift.The indicator light for the previous position will remain ON and the newly selected position indicator light will continue to flash until all the requirements for the selected position have been met. To retry a shift: return the control knob back to the original position, make certain all shift requirements have been met, wait five (5) seconds and try the shift again.

2WD to 4HI or 4HI to 2WD

Rotate the 4WD Control Switch to the desired position. Shifts between 2WD and 4HI can be done with the vehicle stopped or in motion. With the vehicle in motion, the transfer case will engage / disengage faster if you momentarily release the accelerator pedal after turning the control switch. If the vehicle is stopped, the ignition key must be in the ON position with the engine either RUNNING or OFF. This shift cannot be completed if the key is in the accessory position.

NOTE: On vehicles equipped with Anti-Lock Brake Systems, the 4x4 system will not allow shifts between 2WD/ 4HI if the rear wheels are spinning (no traction). In this situation the selected position indicator light will flash and the original position indicator light will remain

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

ON. At this time, reduce speed and stop spinning the wheels to complete the shift. There may be a delay up to 10 seconds for the shift to complete after the wheels have stopped spinning.

4HI to 4LO or 4LO to 4HI

NOTE: When shifting into or out of 4LO some gear noise may be heard. This noise is normal and is not detrimental to the vehicle or occupants.

Shifting can be performed with the vehicle rolling 2-3 mph (3-5 km/h) or completely stopped. USE EITHER OF THE FOLLOWING PROCEDURES:

Preferred Procedure

1. With engine RUNNING, slow vehicle to 2-3 mph (3-5 km/h).

2. Shift the transmission into NEUTRAL (depress clutch on manual transmissions).

3. While still rolling, rotate the transfer case control switch to the desired position.

4. After the desired position indicator light is ON (not flashing), shift transmission back into gear (release clutch on manual transmissions).

Alternate Procedure

1. Bring the vehicle to complete stop.

2. With the key ON and the engine either OFF or RUNNING, shift the transmission into NEUTRAL (depress clutch on manual transmissions).

3. Rotate the transfer case control switch to the desired position.

4. After the desired position indicator light is ON (not flashing), shift transmission back into gear (release clutch on manual transmissions).

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE: If steps 1 or 2 of either the Preferred or Alternate Procedure are not satisfied prior to attempting the shift or if they no longer are being met while the shift attempt is in process then the indicator light will flash and the current transfer case position will be maintained. To retry the selection, turn the control knob back to the current position wait five (5) seconds, and retry shift.

NOTE: The ignition key must be ON for a shift to take place and for the position indicator lights to be operable. If the key is not ON then the shift will not take place and no position indicator lights will be on or flashing.

NV244 Transfer Case Operating Information / Precautions

The NV244 is an electric shift transfer case and is operated by the 4WD Control Switch, which is located on the instrument panel.

The NV244 transfer case provides 4 mode positions - Normal all wheel drive high range, 4 wheel drive high range, 4 wheel drive low range, and neutral.

This transfer case is equipped with an inter-axle differential that allows driving the vehicle in the normal all wheel drive position (AWD) at all times on any given road surface, including dry hard surfaced roads. The AWD mode allows the front and rear wheels to rotate at different speeds. This eliminates driveline binding and component wear normally associated with driving the vehicle in the 4HI position on dry hard surfaced roads. This feature provides the safety, security, and convenience of operating in all wheel drive at all times regardless of road conditions.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

When additional traction is required, the 4HI and 4LO positions can be used to lock the front and rear driveshafts together through the transfer case inter-axle differential and force the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. This is accomplished by rotating the 4WD Control Switch to these positions. The 4HI and 4LO positions are intended for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Driving in the 4HI and 4LO positions on dry hard surfaced roads may cause increased tire wear and damage to the driveline components.

The transfer case Neutral (N) position is selected by depressing the recessed button located on the lower left hand corner of the 4WD Control Switch.

NOTE: The transfer case Neutral (N) position is to be used for recreational towing only. (See Recreational Towing section for specific procedures on shifting into and out of Neutral (N).

Transfer Case Position Indicator Lights

Transfer case position indicator lights are located on the instrument cluster. If there are no indicator lights on or flashing the transfer case position is all-wheel drive (AWD). If an indicator light is on, the desired position (4HI or 4LO) has been met.

If One or More Shift Requirements are not Met

1. An indicator light will flash until conditions are met.
2. The transfer case **will not** shift.

NOTE: Before retrying a selection, make certain that all the necessary requirements for selecting a new transfer case position have been met. To retry the selection, turn the control knob back to the current position, wait five (5) seconds, and retry selection. To find the shift requirements, refer to the ″Shifting Procedure″ for your transfer case, located in this section of the owner's manual.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The SERVICE 4WD warning light monitors the electric shift 4WD system. If this light remains on after engine start up or illuminates during driving, it means that the 4WD system is not functioning properly and that service is required.

WARNING!

Always engage the parking brake when powering down the vehicle if the "SVC 4WD" light is illuminated. Not engaging the parking brake may allow the vehicle to roll which may cause personal injury.

NOTE: Do not attempt to make a shift while only the front or rear wheels are spinning. The NV244 transfer case is not equipped with a synchronizer and therefore the front and rear driveshaft speeds must be equal for the shift to take place. Shifting while only the front or rear wheels are spinning can cause damage to the transfer case.

When operating your vehicle in 4LO, the engine speed is approximately three times that of the AWD or 4HI positions at a given road speed. Take care not to overspeed the engine and do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

Proper operation of 4 wheel drive vehicles depends on tires of equal size, type and circumference on each wheel. Any difference in tire size can cause damage to the transfer case.

Because 4 wheel drive provides improved traction, there is a tendency to exceed safe turning and stopping speeds. Do not go faster than road conditions permit.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

You or others could be injured if you leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the Neutral (N) position without first fully engaging the parking brake. The transfer case Neutral (N) position disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain and will allow the vehicle to move regardless of the transmission position. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.

For additional information on the appropriate use of each transfer case mode position see the information below:

AWD
Normal All Wheel Drive High Range - Employs inter-axle differential. Allows front and rear wheels to rotate at different speeds. All road surfaces.

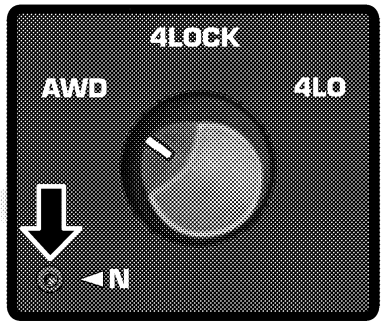
4HI
4 Wheel Drive High Range - Locks the transfer case inter-axle differential. Forces front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. Additional traction for loose, slippery road surfaces only.

4LO
4 Wheel Drive Low Range - Low speed 4 wheel drive. Locks the transfer case inter-axle differential. Forces the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. Additional traction and maximum pulling power for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

N
Neutral - Disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain. To be used for flat towing behind another vehicle. See Recreational Towing for more information.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Shifting Procedure - NV244 Transfer Case



8148c270

NOTE: If any of the requirements to select a new transfer case position have not been met, the transfer case will not shift.The indicator light for the previous position will remain ON and the newly selected position indicator light will continue to flash until all the requirements for the selected position have been met. To retry a shift: return the control knob back to the original position, make certain all shift requirements have been met, wait five (5) seconds and try the shift again.

AWD to 4HI or 4HI to AWD

Rotate the 4WD Control Switch to the desired position. Shifts between AWD and 4HI can be done with the vehicle stopped or in motion. With the vehicle in motion, the transfer case will engage / disengage faster if you momentarily release the accelerator pedal after turning the control switch. If the vehicle is stopped the ignition key must be in the ON position with the engine either RUNNING or OFF. This shift cannot be completed if the key is in the accessory position.

NOTE: On vehicles equipped with a Anti-Lock Brake Systems, the 4x4 system will not allow shifts between AWD/ 4HI if the rear wheels are spinning (no traction). In this situation an indicator light will flash until conditions are met. At this time, reduce speed and stop

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

spinning the wheels to complete the shift. There may be a delay up to 10 seconds for the shift to complete after the wheels have stopped spinning.

NOTE: Delayed shifting out of the 4HI position may be experienced due to uneven tire wear, low tire pressure, or excessive loading.

4HI to 4LO or 4LO to 4HI

NOTE: When shifting into or out of 4LO some gear noise may be heard. This noise is normal and is not detrimental to the vehicle or occupants.

Shifting can be performed with the vehicle rolling 2-3 mph (3-5 km/h) or completely stopped. USE EITHER OF THE FOLLOWING PROCEDURES:

Preferred Procedure

1. With engine RUNNING, slow vehicle to 2-3 mph (3-5 km/h).
2. Shift the transmission into NEUTRAL (depress clutch on manual transmissions).
3. Ensure ignition key is in the ON position with the engine either RUNNING or OFF. While still rolling, rotate the transfer case control switch to the desired position.
4. After the desired position indicator light is ON (not flashing), shift transmission back into gear (release clutch on manual transmissions).

Alternate Procedure

1. Bring the vehicle to complete stop.
2. With the key ON and the engine either OFF or RUNNING, shift the transmission into NEUTRAL (depress clutch on manual transmissions).
3. Rotate the transfer case control switch to the desired position.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

4. After the desired position indicator light is ON (not flashing), shift transmission back into gear (release clutch on manual transmissions).

NOTE: If steps 1 or 2 of either the Preferred or Alternate Procedure are not satisfied prior to attempting the shift or if they no longer are being met while the shift attempt is in process, then the desired position indicator light will flash continuously while the original position indicator light is ON, until all requirements have been met.

NOTE: The ignition key must be ON for a shift to take place and for the position indicator lights to be operable. If the key is not ON then the shift will not take place and no position indicator lights will be on or flashing.

LIMITED-SLIP REAR AXLE DIFFERENTIAL— IF EQUIPPED

The limited-slip differential provides additional traction on snow, ice, mud, sand and gravel. It improves traction when there is a difference between the characteristics of the surface under the right and left rear wheels. During normal driving and cornering, the limited-slip unit is similar to a conventional differential. But on a slippery surface, the differential delivers more of the driving effort to the wheel having the better traction.

WARNING!

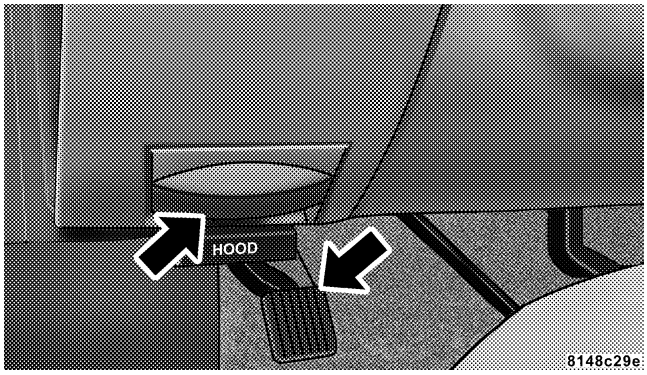
On vehicles equipped with a limited-slip differential, never run the engine with one rear wheel off the ground. The vehicle may drive through the rear wheel remaining on the ground and cause you to lose control of the vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Care should be taken to avoid sudden accelerations when both rear wheels are on a slippery surface. This could cause both rear wheels to spin, and allow the vehicle to slide sideways on the crowned surface of a road or in a turn.

PARKING BRAKE

The foot operated parking brake is positioned below the lower left corner of the instrument panel. To release the parking brake, pull the parking brake release handle.



Be sure the parking brake is firmly set when parked and the gear-shift lever is in PARK position. When parking on a hill you should apply the Parking Brake before placing the gear shift lever in PARK; otherwise the load on the transmission locking mechanism may make it difficult to move the selector out of PARK.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE: The instrument cluster brake warning light indicates only that the parking brake is applied. You must be sure the parking brake is fully applied before leaving the vehicle.

When parking on a hill, turn the front wheels toward the curb on a downhill grade and away from the curb on an uphill grade.

The parking brake should be applied whenever the driver is not in the vehicle.

WARNING!

- **Always fully apply the parking brake when leaving your vehicle, or vehicle may roll and cause damage or injury. Also be certain to leave an automatic transmission in Park. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to roll and cause damage or injury.**
- **Be sure the parking brake is fully disengaged before driving, failure to do so can lead to brake failure and an accident.**
- **Leaving children in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be injured. Children should be warned not to touch the parking brake or the gear selector lever. Don't leave the key in the ignition. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

BRAKE SYSTEM

In the event power assist is lost for any reason (for example, repeated brake applications with the engine off), the brakes will still function. The effort required to brake the vehicle will be significantly increased over that required with the power system operating.

If either the front or rear hydraulic system loses normal capability, the remaining system will still function with some loss of braking effectiveness. This will be evident by increased pedal travel during application, greater pedal force required to slow or stop, and activation of the Brake Warning light and the ABS light during brake use.

Rear Wheel Anti-Lock Brake System — (If Equipped)

This Anti-Lock Brake System provides increased vehicle stability and brake performance under most braking conditions. The system automatically controls the operation of the rear brakes to prevent rear wheel lockup.

The system remains operational in the four-wheel drive mode. The level of performance is reduced when the front brakes are locked up. This will cause the rear brakes to lock-up through the drivetrain, which may reduce the effectiveness of the anti-lock system.

During severe braking conditions, particularly with changing road surfaces, such as ice to concrete, a slight drop or minor pulsation may be felt in the brake pedal.

WARNING!

Both Anti-Lock Brake Systems contain sophisticated electronic equipment. It may be susceptible to interference caused by improperly installed or high output radio transmitting equipment. This interference can cause possible loss of anti-lock braking capability. Installation of such equipment should be done by qualified professionals.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Four-Wheel Anti-Lock Brake System — If Equipped

This Anti-Lock Brake System is designed to aid the driver in maintaining vehicle control under adverse braking conditions. The system operates with a separate computer to modulate hydraulic pressure to prevent wheel lock-up and help avoid skidding on slippery surfaces.

The system's pump motor runs during an ABS stop to provide regulated hydraulic pressure. The pump motor makes a low humming noise during operation, which is normal.

The Anti-Lock Brake System includes an amber ABS warning light. When the light is illuminated, the Anti-Lock Brake System is not functioning. The system reverts to standard non-anti-lock brakes. Turning the ignition OFF and ON again may reset the Anti-Lock Brake System if the fault detected was only momentary.

WARNING!

Pumping of the Anti-Lock Brakes will diminish their effectiveness and may lead to an accident. Pumping makes the stopping distance longer. Just press firmly on your brake pedal when you need to slow down or stop.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

- **Anti-lock system (ABS) cannot prevent the natural laws of physics from acting on the vehicle, nor can it increase braking or steering efficiency beyond that afforded by the condition of the vehicle brakes and tires or the traction afforded.**
- **The ABS cannot prevent accidents, including those resulting from excessive speed in turns, following another vehicle too closely, or hydroplaning. Only a safe, attentive, and skillful driver can prevent accidents.**
- **The capabilities of an ABS equipped vehicle must never be exploited in a reckless or dangerous manner which could jeopardize the user's safety or the safety of others.**

When you are in a severe braking condition involving use of the Anti-lock Brake System, you will experience some pedal drop as the vehicle comes to a stop. This is the result of the system reverting to the base brake system.

Engagement of the Anti-lock Brake System may be accompanied by a pulsing sensation. You may also hear a clicking noise. These occurrences are normal, and indicate that the system is functioning properly.

POWER STEERING

Your power steering system will provide mechanical steering capability if power assist is lost.

If for any reason the hydraulic pressure is interrupted, it will still be possible to steer your vehicle. Under these conditions you will experience an increase in steering effort and a noticeable amount of "free play" in the steering wheel.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

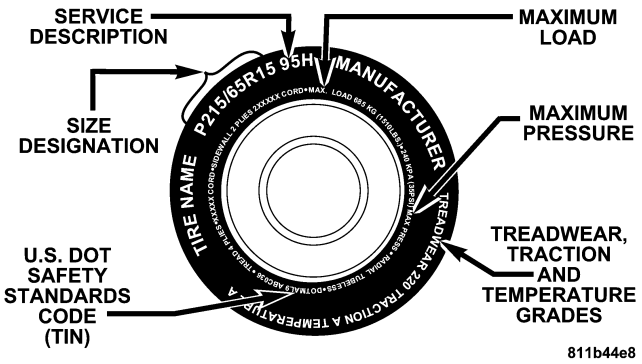
ROCKING THE VEHICLE

If vehicle becomes stuck in snow, sand, or mud, it can often be moved by a rocking motion. Move the gear selector rhythmically between FIRST and REVERSE, while applying slight pressure to the accelerator.

The least amount of accelerator pedal pressure to maintain the rocking motion without spinning the wheels or racing the engine is most effective. Allow the engine to idle with the transmission selector in NEUTRAL for at least one minute after every five rocking-motion cycles. This will minimize overheating and reduce the risk of transmission failure during prolonged efforts to free a stuck vehicle.

TIRE SAFETY INFORMATION

Tire Markings



811b44e8

NOTE:

- P(Passenger)-Metric tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards. P-Metric tires have the letter "P" molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: P215/65R15 95H.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- European Metric tire sizing is based on European design standards. Tires designed to this standard have the tire size molded into the sidewall beginning with the section width. The letter ″P″ is absent from this tire size designation. Example: 215/65R15 96H
- LT(Light Truck)-Metric tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards. The size designation for LT-Metric tires is the same as for P-Metric tires except for the letters “LT″ that are molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: LT235/85R16.
- Temporary Spare tires are high pressure compact spares designed for temporary emergency use only. Tires designed to this standard have the letter “T″ molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: T145/80D18 103M.
- High Flotation tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards and begins with the tire diameter molded into the sidewall. Example: 31x10.5 R15 LT.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire Sizing Chart

EXAMPLE:
Size Designation: **P** = Passenger car tire size based on U.S. design standards **"....blank...."** = Passenger car tire based on European design standards **LT** = Light Truck tire based on U.S. design standards **T** = Temporary Spare tire **31** = Overall Diameter in Inches (in)
215 = Section Width in Milimeters (mm)
65 = Aspect Ratio in Percent (%) —Ratio of section height to section width of tire. **10.5** = Section Width in Inches (in)
R = Construction Code —"R" means Radial Construction. —"D" means Diagonal or Bias Construction.
15 = Rim Diameter in Inches (in)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

EXAMPLE:
Service Description:
95 = Load Index —A numerical code associated with the maximum load a tire can carry.
H = Speed Symbol —A symbol indicating the range of speeds at which a tire can carry a load corresponding to its load index under certain operating conditions. —The maximum speed corresponding to the Speed Symbol should only be achieved under specified operating conditions. (ie. tire pressure, vehicle loading, road conditions and posted speed limits).
Load Identification:
"....blank...." = Absence of any text on sidewall of the tire indicates a Standard Load (SL) Tire
Extra Load (XL) = Extra Load (or Reinforced) Tire
Light Load = Light Load Tire
C,D,E = Load range associated with the maximum load a tire can carry at a specified pressure
Maximum Load — Maximum Load indicates the maximum load this tire is designed to carry.
Maximum Pressure — Maximum Pressure indicates the maximum permissible cold tire inflation pressure for this tire.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire Identification Number (TIN)

The TIN may be found on one or both sides of the tire however the date code may only be on one side. Tires with white sidewalls will have the full TIN including date code located on the white sidewall side of the tire. Look for the TIN on the outboard side of black sidewall tires as mounted on the vehicle. If the TIN is not found on the outboard side then you will find it on the inboard side of the tire.

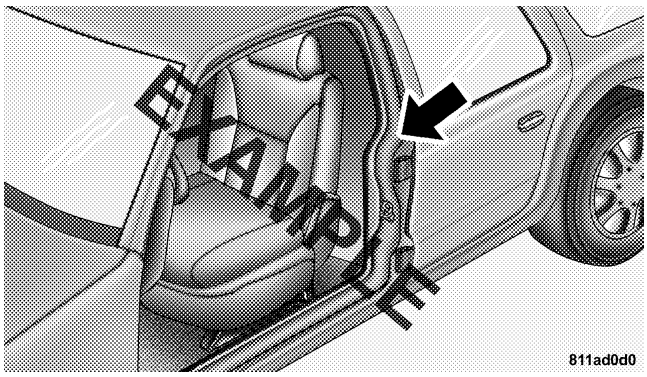
EXAMPLE:
DOT MA L9 ABCD 0301
DOT = Department of Transportation —This symbol certifies that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation tire safety standards, and is approved for highway use.
MA = Code representing the tire manufacturing location.(2 digits)
L9 = Code representing the tire size.(2 digits)
ABCD = Code used by tire manufacturer.(1 to 4 digits)
03 = Number representing the week in which the tire was manufactured.(2 digits) —03 means the 3rd week.
01 = Number representing the year in which the tire was manufactured.(2 digits) —01 means the year 2001. —Prior to July 2000, tire manufacturers were only required to have 1 number to represent the year in which the tire was manufactured. Example: 031 could represent the 3rd week of 1981 or 1991.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire Loading and Tire Pressure

Tire Placard Location

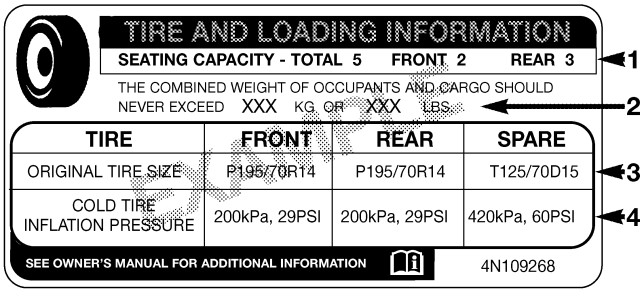
NOTE: The proper cold tire inflation pressure for passenger cars is listed on either the face of the driver's door or the driver's side "B" pillar. For vehicles other than passenger cars, the cold tire inflation pressures are listed on either the shutface of the driver's door, the "B" pillar, the Certification Label or in the Tire Inflation Pressures brochure in the glove compartment.



Tire Placard Location

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire and Loading Information Placard



811b5a9a

Tire and Loading Information

This placard tells you important information about the:

1) number of people that can be carried in the vehicle
2) the total weight your vehicle can carry
3) the tire size designed for your vehicle
4) the cold tire inflation pressures for the front, rear and spare tires.

Loading

The vehicle maximum load on the tire must not exceed the load carrying capacity of the tire on your vehicle. You will not exceed the tire's load carrying capacity if you adhere to the loading conditions, tire size and cold tire inflation pressures specified on the Tire and Loading Information placard and the Vehicle Loading section of this manual.

NOTE: Under a maximum loaded vehicle condition, gross axle weight ratings (GAWR's) for the front and rear axles must not be exceeded. For further information on GAWR's, vehicle loading and trailer towing, see the Vehicle Loading section of this manual.

To determine the maximum loading conditions of your vehicle, locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on the Tire and Loading Information placard. The

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

combined weight of occupants, cargo/luggage and trailer tongue weight (if applicable) should never exceed the weight referenced here.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX pounds" on your vehicle's placard.

2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kilograms or XXX pounds.

4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lb. (since 5 x 150 = 750, and 1400 – 750 = 650 lb.)

5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in step 4.

6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

NOTE: The following table shows examples on how to calculate total load, cargo/luggage and towing capacities of your vehicle with varying seating configurations and number and size of occupants. This table is for illustration purposes only and may not be accurate for the seating and load carry capacity of your vehicle.

NOTE: For the following example the combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 865 lbs. (392 Kg).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Occupants			Combined weight of occupants and cargo from Tire Placard	MINUS	Combined Occupant's weight	=	AVAILABLE Cargo/Luggage and Trailer Tongue Weight
TOTAL	FRONT	REAR					
EXAMPLE 1					Occupant 1: 200 lbs Occupant 2: 130 lbs Occupant 3: 160 lbs Occupant 4: 100 lbs Occupant 5: 80 lbs TOTAL WEIGHT: 670 lbs		
5	2	3	865 lbs	minus	670 lbs	=	195 lbs
EXAMPLE 2					Occupant 1: 210 lbs Occupant 2: 180 lbs Occupant 3: 150 lbs TOTAL WEIGHT: 540 lbs		
3	2	1	865 lbs	minus	540 lbs	=	325 lbs
EXAMPLE 3					Occupant 1: 200 lbs Occupant 2: 200 lbs TOTAL WEIGHT: 400 lbs		
2	2	0	865 lbs	minus	400 lbs	=	465 lbs

EXAMPLE

811a4d11

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

Overloading of your tires is dangerous. Overloading can cause tire failure, affect vehicle handling, and increase your stopping distance. Use tires of the recommended load capacity for your vehicle. Never overload them.

TIRES—GENERAL INFORMATION

Tire Pressure

Proper tire inflation pressure is essential to the safe and satisfactory operation of your vehicle. Three primary areas are affected by improper tire pressure:

1. Safety—

WARNING!

Improperly inflated tires are dangerous and can cause accidents.

• Under inflation increases tire flexing and can result in tire failure.

• Over inflation reduces a tire's ability to cushion shock. Objects on the road and chuck holes can cause damage that results in tire failure.

• Unequal tire pressures can cause steering problems. You could lose control of your vehicle.

• Over inflated or under inflated tires can affect vehicle handling and can fail suddenly, resulting in loss of vehicle control.

• Unequal tire pressures from one side of the vehicle to the other can cause the vehicle to drift to the right or left.

Always drive with each tire inflated to the recommended cold tire inflation pressure.

5

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

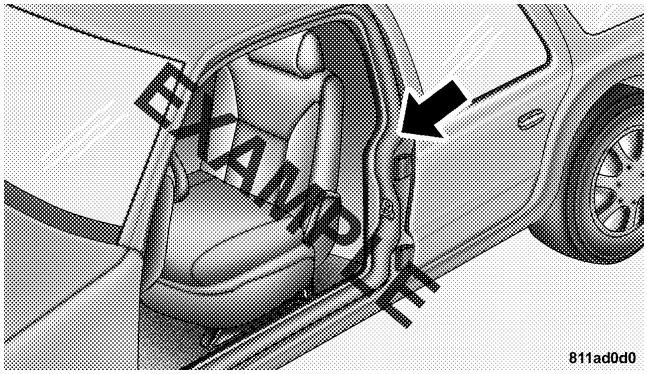
2. Economy—
Improper inflation pressures can cause uneven wear patterns to develop across the tire tread. These abnormal wear patterns will reduce tread life resulting in a need for earlier tire replacement. Underinflation also increases tire rolling resistance and results in higher fuel consumption.

3. Ride Comfort and Vehicle Stability—
Proper tire inflation contributes to a comfortable ride. Overinflation produces a jarring and uncomfortable ride.

Tire Inflation Pressures

The proper cold tire inflation pressure for passenger cars is listed on either the face of the driver's door or the driver's side "B" pillar. For vehicles other than passenger cars, the cold tire inflation pressures are listed on either the "B" pillar, the Certification Label or in the Tire Inflation Pressures brochure in the glove compartment.

Some vehicles may have Supplemental Tire Pressure Information for vehicle loads that are less than the maximum loaded vehicle condition. These pressure conditions will be found in the "Supplemental Tire Pressure Information" section of this manual.



Tire Placard Location

The pressure should be checked and adjusted as well as inspecting for signs of tire wear or visible damage at least once a month. Use a good quality pocket-type gauge to

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

check tire pressure. Do not make a visual judgement when determining proper inflation. Radial tires may look properly inflated even when they are under inflated.

CAUTION!

After inspecting or adjusting the tire pressure always reinstall the valve stem cap–if equipped. This will prevent moisture and dirt from entering the valve stem, which could damage the valve stem.

Inflation pressures specified on the placard are always "cold tire inflation pressure". Cold tire inflation pressure is defined as the tire pressure after the vehicle has not been driven for at least 3 hours, or driven less than 1mile (1 km) after a 3 hour period. The cold tire inflation pressure must not exceed the maximum inflation pressure molded into the tire side wall.

Check tire pressures more often if subject to a wide range of outdoor temperatures, as tire pressures vary with temperature changes.

Tire pressures change by approximately 1 psi (7 kPa) per 12° F (7° C) of air temperature change. Keep this in mind when checking tire pressure inside a garage especially in the winter.

Example: If garage temperature = 68° F (20° C) and the outside temperature = 32° F (0° C) then the cold tire inflation pressure should be increased by 3 psi (21 kPa), which equals 1 psi (7 kPa) for every 12° F (7° C) for this outside temperature condition.

Tire pressure may increase from 2 to 6 psi (13 to 40 kPa) during operation. DO NOT reduce this normal pressure build up or your tire pressure will be too low.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire Pressures for High Speed Operation

The manufacturer advocates driving at safe speeds within posted speed limits. Where speed limits or conditions are such that the vehicle can be driven at high speeds, maintaining correct tire inflation pressure is very important. Increased tire pressure and reduced vehicle loading may be required for high speed vehicle operation. Refer to original equipment or an authorized tire dealer for recommended safe operating speeds, loading and cold tire inflation pressures.

WARNING!

High speed driving with your vehicle under maximum load is dangerous. The added strain on your tires could cause them to fail. You could have a serious accident. Don't drive a vehicle loaded to the maximum capacity at continuous speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h).

Radial-Ply Tires

WARNING!

Combining radial ply tires with other types of tires on your vehicle will cause your vehicle to handle poorly. The instability could cause an accident. Always use radial ply tires in sets of four (or 6, in case of trucks with dual rear wheels). Never combine them with other types of tires.

Cuts and punctures in radial tires are repairable only in the tread area because of sidewall flexing. Consult your authorized tire dealer for radial tire repairs.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Compact Spare Tire — If Equipped

The compact spare is for temporary emergency use with radial tires. It is engineered to be used on your style vehicle only. Since this tire has limited tread life, the original tire should be repaired (or replaced) and reinstalled at the first opportunity.

WARNING!

Temporary use spare tires are for emergency use only. With these tires, do not drive more than 50 mph (80 km/h). Temporary-use spare tires have limited tread life. When two or more tread wear indicators appear in adjacent grooves, the temporary use spare tire needs to be replaced. Be sure to follow the warnings which apply to your spare. Failure to do so could result in spare tire failure and loss of vehicle control.

Do not install a wheel cover or attempt to mount a conventional tire on the compact spare wheel, since the wheel is designed specifically for the compact spare.

Do not install more than one compact spare tire/wheel on the vehicle at any given time.

CAUTION!

Because of the reduced ground clearance, do not take your vehicle through an automatic car wash with the compact spare installed. Damage to the vehicle may result.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Limited Use Spare — If Equipped

The limited use spare tire is for temporary emergency use on your vehicle. This tire is identified by a limited use spare tire warning label located on the limited use spare tire and wheel assembly. This tire may look like the original equipped tire on the front or rear axle of your vehicle, but it is not. Installation of this limited use spare tire affects vehicle handling. Since it is not the same tire, replace (or repair) the original tire and reinstall on vehicle at the first opportunity.

WARNING!

The limited use spare tires are for emergency use only. Installation of this limited use spare tire affects vehicle handling. With this tire, do not drive more than 60 mph (100 km/h). Keep inflated to the cold tire inflation pressure listed on either your tire placard or limited use spare tire and wheel assembly. Replace (or repair) the original tire at the first opportunity and reinstall it on your vehicle. Failure to do so could result in loss of vehicle control.

Tire Spinning

When stuck in mud, sand, snow, or ice conditions, do not spin your vehicle's wheels above 35 mph (55 km/h).

See the paragraph on Freeing A Stuck Vehicle in Section 6 of this manual.

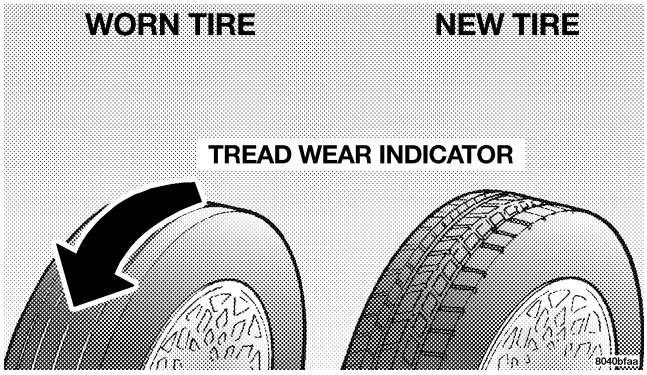
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

Fast spinning tires can be dangerous. Forces generated by excessive wheel speeds may cause tire damage or failure. A tire could explode and injure someone. Do not spin your vehicle's wheels faster than 35 mph (55 km/h) when you are stuck. And don't let anyone near a spinning wheel, no matter what the speed.

Tread Wear Indicators

Tread wear indicators are in the original equipment tires to help you in determining when your tires should be replaced.



These indicators are molded into the bottom of the tread grooves and will appear as bands when the tread depth becomes 1/16 inch (2 mm). When the indicators appear in 2 or more adjacent grooves, the tire should be replaced.

Many states have laws requiring tire replacement at this point.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Replacement Tires

The tires on your new vehicle provide a balance of many characteristics. They should be inspected regularly for wear and correct cold tire inflation pressure. The manufacturer strongly recommends that you use tires equivalent to the originals in size, quality and performance when replacement is needed (see the paragraph on tread wear indicators). Refer to the Tire and Loading Information placard for the size designation of your tire. The service description and load identification will be found on the original equipment tire. Failure to use equivalent replacement tires may adversely affect the safety, handling, and ride of your vehicle. We recommend that you contact your original equipment or an authorized tire dealer with any questions you may have on tire specifications or capability.

WARNING!

- **Do not use a tire, wheel size or rating other than that specified for your vehicle. Some combinations of unapproved tires and wheels may change suspension dimensions and performance characteristics, resulting in changes to steering, handling, and braking of your vehicle. This can cause unpredictable handling and stress to steering and suspension components. You could lose control and have an accident resulting in serious injury or death. Use only the tire and wheel sizes with load ratings approved for your vehicle.**
- **Never use a tire with a smaller load index or capacity, other than what was originally equipped on your vehicle. Using a tire with a smaller load index could result in tire overloading and failure. You could lose control and have an accident.**
- **Failure to equip your vehicle with tires having adequate speed capability can result in sudden tire failure and loss of vehicle control.**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION!

Replacing original tires with tires of a different size may result in false speedometer and odometer readings.

Alignment And Balance

Poor suspension alignment may result in:

- Fast tire wear.
- Uneven tire wear, such as feathering and one-sided wear.
- Vehicle pull to right or left.

Tires may also cause the vehicle to pull to the left or right. Alignment will not correct this condition. See your dealer for proper diagnosis.

Improper alignment will not cause vehicle vibration. Vibration may be a result of tire and wheel out-of-balance. Proper balancing will reduce vibration and avoid tire cupping and spotty wear.

SUPPLEMENTAL TIRE PRESSURE INFORMATION

A light load vehicle condition is defined as two passengers {150 lbs (68 kg) each} plus 200 lbs (91kg) of cargo. Cold tire inflation pressures for a lightly loaded vehicle will be found on a "Supplemental Tire Pressure Inflation" label located on the face of the driver's door or in the Tire Information Pressures pamphlet in the glove box.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

TIRE CHAINS

Use "Class S" chains only on the rear tires on Dakota trucks, or other traction aids that meet SAE Type "S" specifications.

NOTE: Chains must be the proper size for the vehicle, as recommended by the chain manufacturer.

CAUTION!

To avoid damage to your vehicle, tires or chains, observe the following precautions:

- **Because of limited chain clearance between tires and other suspension components, it is important that only chains in good condition are used. Broken chains can cause serious vehicle damage. Stop the vehicle immediately if noise occurs that could suggest chain breakage. Remove the damaged parts of the chain before further use.**
- **Install chains as tightly as possible and then retighten after driving about 1/2 mile (0.8 km).**
- **Do not exceed 45 mph (72 km/h).**
- **Drive cautiously and avoid severe turns and large bumps, especially with a loaded vehicle.**
- **Do not install tire chains on front wheels of 4x2 vehicles.**
- **Do not drive for a prolonged period on dry pavement.**
- **Observe the tire chain manufacturer's instructions on method of installation, operating speed, and conditions for usage. Always use the lower suggested operating speed of the chain manufacturer if different than the speed recommended by the manufacturer.**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

These cautions apply to all chain traction devices, including link and cable (radial) chains.

Tire chain use is permitted only on the rear tires of Dakota trucks.

NOTE: The use of class "S" chains is permitted on Dakotas with P245/70R16 tires.

CAUTION!

Do not use tire chains on 4x4 Dakota trucks equipped with P265/65R17 tires. There may not be adequate clearance for the chains and you are risking structural or body damage to your vehicle. Do not use tire chains on the 4X2 front wheels of Dakota models. There may not be adequate clearance for the chains and you are risking structural or body damage to your vehicle.

SNOW TIRES

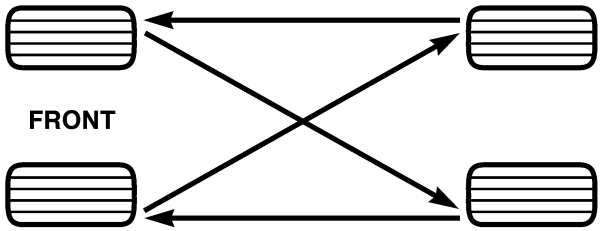
Snow tires should be of the same size and type construction as the front tires. Consult the manufacturer of the snow tire to determine any maximum vehicle speed requirement associated with the tire. These tires should always be operated at the vehicle maximum capacity inflation pressures under any load condition.

While studded tires improve performance on ice, skid and traction capability on wet or dry surfaces may be poorer than that of non-studded tires. Some states prohibit studded tires; therefore, local laws should be checked before using these tire types.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

TIRE ROTATION RECOMMENDATIONS

Tires on the front and rear axles of vehicles operate at different loads and perform different steering, driving, and braking functions. For these reasons, they wear at unequal rates and tend to develop irregular wear patterns. These effects can be reduced by timely rotation of tires. The benefits of rotation are especially worthwhile with aggressive tread designs such as those on all season type tires. Rotation will increase tread life, help to maintain mud, snow and wet traction levels, and contribute to a smooth, quiet ride.



8031e864

Follow the recommended tire rotation frequency for your type of driving found in the "Maintenance Schedules" Section of this manual. More frequent rotation is permissible if desired. The reasons for any rapid or unusual wear should be corrected prior to rotation being performed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

FUEL REQUIREMENTS

800dfab6

3.7L/4.7L Engines

All engines are designed to meet all emissions regulations and provide excellent fuel economy and performance when using high quality unleaded "regular" gasoline having an octane rating of 87. The routine use of premium gasoline is not recommended. Under normal conditions the use of premium fuel will not provide a benefit over high quality regular gasolines and in some circumstances may result in poorer performance.

800dfab8

4.7L HO Engines

The 4.7 HO engine is designed to meet all emissions regulations and provide satisfactory fuel economy and performance when using high quality unleaded gasoline having an octane range of 87 to 91. The manufacturer recommends the use of 91 octane for optimum performance.

Light spark knock at low engine speeds is not harmful to your engine. However, continued heavy spark knock at high speeds can cause damage and immediate service is required.

Poor quality gasoline can cause problems such as hard starting, stalling and hesitations. If you experience these symptoms, try another brand of "regular" gasoline before considering service for the vehicle.

Over 40 auto manufacturers world-wide have issued and endorsed consistent gasoline specifications (the Worldwide Fuel Charter, WWFC) to define fuel properties necessary to deliver enhanced emissions, performance and durability for your vehicle. We recommend the use of gasolines that meet the WWFC specifications if they are available.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Reformulated Gasoline

Many areas of the country require the use of cleaner burning gasoline referred to as "Reformulated Gasoline." Reformulated gasolines contain oxygenates, and are specifically blended to reduce vehicle emissions and improve air quality.

We strongly support the use of reformulated gasolines. Properly blended reformulated gasolines will provide excellent performance and durability for the engine and fuel system components.

Gasoline/Oxygenate Blends

Some fuel suppliers blend unleaded gasoline with oxygenates such as 10% ethanol, MTBE and ETBE. Oxygenates are required in some areas of the country during the winter months to reduce carbon monoxide emissions. Fuels blended with these oxygenates may be used in your vehicle.

CAUTION!

DO NOT use gasolines containing METHANOL. Gasoline containing methanol may damage critical fuel system components.

MMT In Gasoline

MMT is a manganese-containing metallic additive that is blended into some gasoline to increase octane. Gasolines blended with MMT provide no performance advantage beyond gasolines of the same octane number without MMT. Gasolines blended with MMT reduce spark plug life and reduce emission system performance. We recommend that gasolines free of MMT be used in your vehicle. The MMT content of gasoline may not be indicated on the gasoline pump; therefore, you should ask your gasoline retailer whether or not his/her gasoline contains MMT.

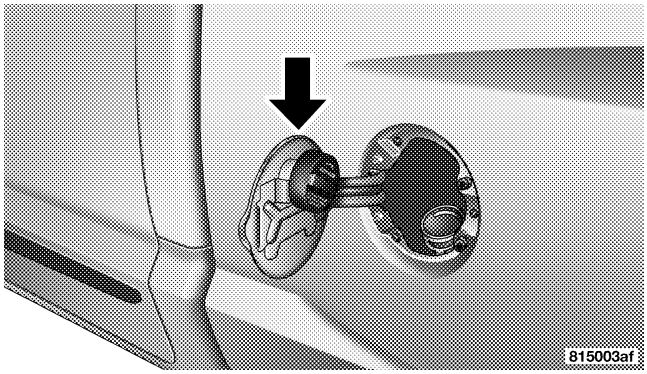
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

It is even more important to look for gasolines without MMT in Canada because MMT can be used at levels higher than allowed in the United States. MMT is prohibited in Federal and California reformulated gasolines.

Materials Added To Fuel

All gasolines sold in the United States are required to contain effective detergent additives. Use of additional detergents or other additives is not needed under normal conditions and would result in unnecessary cost. Therefore, you should not have to add anything to the fuel.

ADDING FUEL



Fuel Cap Holder

NOTE: If fuel is poured from a portable container, the container should have a flexible nozzle long enough to extend into the fuel filler tube.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION!

To avoid fuel spillage and overfilling, do not "top off" the fuel tank after filling.

NOTE: When the fuel nozzle "clicks" or shuts off, the fuel tank is full.

NOTE: Tighten the gas cap until you hear a "clicking" sound. This is an indication that the gas cap is properly tightened. Make sure that the gas cap is tightened each time the vehicle is refueled.

WARNING!

A fire may result if gasoline is pumped into a portable container that is inside of a vehicle or on a truck bed. You could be burned. Always place gas containers on the ground while filling.

Fuel Filler Cap (Gas Cap)

The gas cap is behind the fuel filler door. If the gas cap is lost or damaged, be sure the replacement cap is for use with this vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION!

Damage to the fuel system or emission control system could result from using an improper fuel tank filler tube cap (gas cap). A poorly fitting cap could let impurities into the fuel system.

WARNING!

- **Never allow any lit smoking materials near the vehicles while removing the cap or filling the tank.**
- **Never add fuel to the vehicle when the engine is running.**

Fuel System Cautions

CAUTION!

Follow these guidelines to maintain your vehicle's performance:

- The use of leaded gas is prohibited by Federal law. Using leaded gasoline can impair engine performance, damage the emission control system.
- An out-of-tune engine, or certain fuel or ignition malfunctions, can cause the catalytic converter to overheat. If you notice a pungent burning odor or some light smoke, your engine may be out of tune or malfunctioning and may require immediate service. Contact your dealer for service assistance.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- When pulling a heavy load or driving a fully loaded vehicle when the humidity is low and the temperature is high, use a premium unleaded fuel to help prevent spark knock. If spark knock persists, lighten the load, or engine piston damage may result.
- The use of fuel additives which are now being sold as octane enhancers is not recommended. Many of these products contain high concentrations of methanol. Fuel system damage or vehicle performance problems resulting from the use of such fuels or additives is not the responsibility of the manufacturer.

NOTE: Intentional tampering with emissions control systems can result in civil penalties being assessed against you.

Carbon Monoxide Warnings

WARNING!

Carbon monoxide (CO) in exhaust gases is deadly. Follow the precautions below to prevent carbon monoxide poisoning:

- Do not inhale exhaust gases. They contain carbon monoxide, a colorless and odorless gas which can kill. Never run the engine in a closed area, such as a garage, and never sit in a parked vehicle with the engine running for an extended period. If the vehicle is stopped in an open area with the engine running for more than a short period, adjust the ventilation system to force fresh, outside air into the vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Guard against carbon monoxide with proper maintenance. Have the exhaust system inspected every time the vehicle is raised. Have any abnormal conditions repaired promptly. Until repaired, drive with all side windows fully open.
- Keep the liftgate closed when driving your vehicle to prevent carbon monoxide and other poisonous exhaust gases from entering the vehicle.

CATALYTIC CONVERTER

The catalytic converter requires the use of unleaded fuel only. Leaded gasoline will destroy the effectiveness of the catalyst as an emission control device. Under normal operating conditions, the catalytic converter will not require maintenance. However, you must keep the engine maintained to assure proper operation and prevent possible damage.

NOTE: Intentional tampering with emissions control systems can result in civil penalties being assessed against you.

CAUTION!

Damage to the catalytic converter can result if your vehicle is not kept in proper operating condition. In the event of engine malfunction, particularly involving engine misfire or other apparent loss of performance, have your vehicle serviced promptly. Continued operation of your vehicle with a severe malfunction could cause the converter to overheat, resulting in possible damage to the converter and vehicle.

As with any vehicle, do not park or operate this vehicle in areas where combustible materials such as grass or leaves can come in contact with a hot exhaust system.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

A scorching odor may be detected if you continue to run a malfunctioning engine. The odor may indicate severe and abnormal catalyst overheating. If this occurs, the vehicle should be stopped, the engine shut off and the vehicle allowed to cool. Service, including a tune-up to manufacturer's specifications should be obtained immediately.

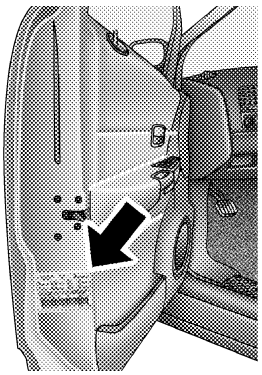
To minimize the possibility of catalyst damage:

- Do not try to start the engine by pushing or towing the vehicle.
- Do not idle the engine with any spark plug wires disconnected or removed.
- Do not idle the engine for prolonged periods during very rough idle or malfunctioning operating conditions.
- Do not allow vehicle to run out of fuel.

VEHICLE LOADING

Certification Label

As required by National Highway Traffic Safety Administration Regulations, your vehicle has a certification label affixed to the driver's side door.



8120c1d2

This label contains the month and year of manufacture, Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), Gross Axle Weight

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Rating (GAWR) front and rear, and Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). A Month-Day-Hour (MDH) number is included on this label and shows the Month, Day, and Hour of manufacture. The bar code that appears on the bottom of the label is your Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)
The GVWR is the total permissible weight of your vehicle including driver, passengers, vehicle, options, and cargo. The label also specifies maximum capacities of front and rear axle systems. Total load must be limited so that GVWR is not exceeded.

Payload
The payload of a vehicle is defined as the allowable load weight a truck can carry including the weight of the driver, all passengers, options, and cargo.

Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)
The GAWR is the maximum permissible load on the front and rear axles. The load must be distributed in the cargo area so that the GAWR of each axle is not exceeded.

Each axle GAWR is determined by the component in the system with the lowest load carrying capacity (axle, springs, tires, or wheels).

Heavier axles or suspension components sometimes specified by purchasers for increased durability do not necessarily increase the vehicle's GVWR.

Tire Size
This is the minimum allowable tire size for your vehicle. Replacement tires must be equal to the load capacity of this tire size.

Rim Size
This is the rim size that is appropriate for the tire size listed.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Inflation Pressure (Cold)
This is the cold tire inflation pressure for your vehicle for all loading conditions up to full GAWR.

Curb Weight

The curb weight of a vehicle is defined as the total weight of the vehicle with all fluids, including vehicle fuel, at full capacity conditions, and with no occupants or cargo loaded into the vehicle. The front and rear curb weight values are determined by weighing your vehicle on a commercial scale before any occupants or cargo are added.

Loading

The actual total weight and the weight of the front and rear of your vehicle at the ground can best be determined by weighing it when it is loaded and ready for operation. The entire vehicle should first be weighed on a commercial scale to insure that the GVWR has not been exceeded. The weight on the front and rear of the vehicle should then be determined separately to be sure that the load is properly distributed over front and rear axle. Weighing the vehicle may show that the GAWR of either the front or rear axles has been exceeded but the total load is within the specified GVWR. If so, weight must be shifted from front to rear or rear to front as appropriate until the specified weight limitations are met.

Store heavier items down low and be sure that the weight is distributed equally. Stow all loose items securely before driving.

Improper weight distribution can have an adverse effect on the way your vehicle steers and handles and the way the brakes operate.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

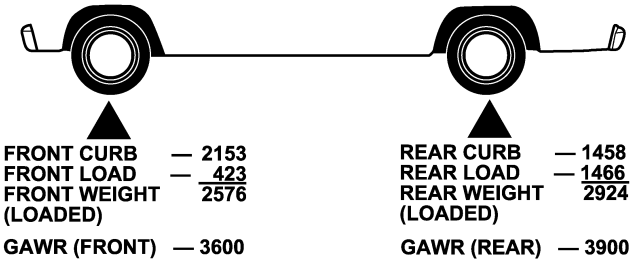
WARNING!

Do not load your vehicle any heavier than the GVWR or the maximum front and rear GAWR. If you do, parts on your vehicle can break, or it can change the way your vehicle handles. This could cause you to lose control. Also, overloading can shorten the life of your vehicle.

A loaded vehicle is shown in the following example. Note that neither GVWR nor GAWR capabilities are exceeded. Overloading can cause potential safety hazards and shorten service life.

NOTE: The weights shown in this chart are not the weights for your vehicle. Also, the amount of load added to both the front and rear axles can be computed after the vehicle has been weighed both in its "curb weight" condition, and in its "loaded and ready for operation" condition.

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) 6500 LBS.



8120c425

5

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

TRAILER TOWING

To maintain warranty coverage, follow the requirements and recommendations in this manual concerning vehicles used for trailer towing.

Definitions

The following trailer towing related terminology definitions will assist in understanding the subsequent sections:

GROSS COMBINATION WEIGHT RATING (GCWR) is the total permissible weight of your vehicle and trailer when weighed in combination. (Note that GCWR ratings include a 68 kg (150 lb.) allowance for the presence of a driver.) Tongue Weight (of a trailer) is the weight placed on a vehicle's trailer hitch by the trailer.

GROSS TRAILER WEIGHT (GTW) is the weight of the trailer plus the weight of all cargo, consumables and equipment (permanent or temporary) loaded in or on the trailer in its "loaded and ready for operation" condition.

TRAILER SWAY CONTROL is a telescoping link that can be installed between the hitch receiver and the trailer tongue that typically provides adjustable friction associated with the telescoping motion to dampen any unwanted trailer swaying motions while traveling.

CAUTION!

- **During the first 500 miles (805 km) your new vehicle is driven, do not tow a trailer. Doing so may damage your vehicle.**
- **When first towing a trailer, limit your speed to 50 mph (80 km/h) during the first 500 miles (805 km) of towing.**

Perform the maintenance listed in Section 8 of this manual. When towing a trailer, never exceed the GAWR, or GCWR, ratings.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Consider the following items when computing the weight on the rear axle:

- The tongue weight of the trailer.
- The weight of any other type of cargo or equipment put in or on your vehicle.

NOTE: Remember that everything put into or on the trailer adds to the load on your vehicle. Also, additional factory-installed options, or dealer-installed options, must be considered as part of the total load on your vehicle. Refer to the Certification label located at the driver's door for the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

WARNING!

Improper towing can lead to an injury accident. Follow these guidelines to make your trailer towing as safe as possible:

- Be sure the trailer is loaded heavier in front, with 60% to 65% of the weight in front of the axle(s). Loads balanced over the wheels or heavier in the rear can cause the trailer to sway **severely** side to side which will cause loss of control of vehicle and trailer. Failure to load trailers heavier in front is the cause of many trailer accidents.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

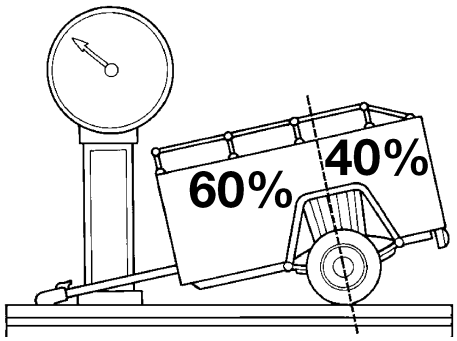
- Do **not** interconnect the hydraulic brake system of your vehicle with that of the trailer. This could cause inadequate braking and possible personal injury.
- Trailer brakes are recommended for trailers over 1,000 lbs (454 kg) and required for trailers in excess of 2,000 lbs. (907 kg).
- Use an approved trailer harness and connector. If a hitch is ordered, the proper wiring will be provided.
- When hauling cargo or towing a trailer, do not overload your vehicle or trailer. Overloading can cause a loss of control, poor performance or damage to brakes, axle, engine, transmission, steering, suspension, chassis structure or tires.
- Make certain that the load is secured in the trailer and will not shift during travel. When trailering cargo that cannot be fully secured, dynamic load shifts can occur that may be difficult for the driver to control.
- All trailer hitches should be professionally installed on your vehicle.
- Safety chains must always be used between your vehicle and trailer.
- Connect trailer lighting and brakes using factory harnesses only. Do not cut or splice any wiring to the brake circuits.

Trailer and Tongue Weight

Gross Trailer Weight (GTW) means the maximum allowable weight of the trailer plus the weight of all cargo and equipment loaded on the trailer when in actual underway towing condition. The recommended way to measure GTW is to put your fully loaded trailer on a vehicle scale. The entire weight of the trailer must be supported by the scale.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tongue Weight is the weight placed on the vehicle's trailer hitch by the trailer. Always load a trailer with 60% to 65% of the weight in the front of the trailer. This places 10% to 15% of the GTW on the tow hitch of your vehicle.



Trailer sway control and equalizing hitch are required for tongue weights above 350 lbs. (159 kg).

Also, there are maximum tongue weight ratings that are not to be exceeded, as follows:

- Class IV (the receiver hitch type) 1100 lbs (500 kg)

Gross Combined Vehicle Weight Rating (GCWR)

The Gross Combined Vehicle Weight Rating (GCWR) is the **MAXIMUM** allowable weight of the towing vehicle, including passengers and cargo, and the weight of the loaded trailer. Calculate the maximum trailer weight (MTW) by subtracting the towing vehicle's weight, including passengers, and cargo from GCWR.

Trailer Towing—Hitches:

With a Class IV Hitch, you can tow a trailer with a Gross Trailer Weight of up to 7, 000 lbs. (3175 kg.) depending on your vehicle equipment. The Trailer Tow Package includes the platform hitch receiver, and a 7 lead wiring harness mounted on the hitch. Tongue weight must be equal to at least 10% of GTW, but no more that 15% of GTW.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE: When towing a trailer, the following requirements must be adhered to:

- **GCWR must not be exceeded**
- **Total weight must be distributed between the tow vehicle and the trailer such that the following four (4) ratings are not exceeded:**

  1. **GVWR**
  2. **GTW**
  3. **Tongue weight rating for the trailer hitch utilized (This requirement may limit the ability to always achieve the 10% to 15% range of tongue weight as a percentage of total trailer weight.)**
  4. **GAWR ratings**

Trailer Towing Information (Maximum Trailer Weight Ratings)

"Trailer Towing Guide"

NOTE: For trailer towing information (maximum trailer weight ratings) refer to the following website address: **http:// www.dodge.com/towing.**

In Canada, refer to the following website address: **http:// www.dodge.ca.**

Trailer Towing Requirements

All Dodge Dakota trucks are intended to tow trailers up to 2,000 lbs. (907 kg) without added equipment or alterations to standard equipment. Your vehicle may be factory equipped for safe towing of trailers over 2,000 lbs. (907 kg) with the trailer tow package.The electrical part of this package includes an instruction sheet and wiring pigtail for an aftermarket electric trailer brake controller. These items are stored in the glove box.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

If you regularly pull a trailer, regardless of the trailer size, stop and turn signals on the trailer are recommended for motoring safety.

When the additional trailer lighting is connected to the vehicle, the flasher does not provide an indication of outside lamp/bulb failure. Therefore, an occasional visual check around the vehicle is recommended. Once the trailer is removed the above indication will return to the vehicle.

WARNING!

The direct connection of hydraulic brake lines from vehicle brake system to trailer system is not acceptable. The extra load may cause brake failure and you may be injured.

All Dakota models require an electrically actuated electric brake controller. A blue colored connector for electric brake hookup is located under the instrument panel above the brake pedal.

Heavy trailer towing also may require breakaway electric trailer brakes, anti-sway devices or equalizing hitches for safe operation. Such devices are commonly required by state law.

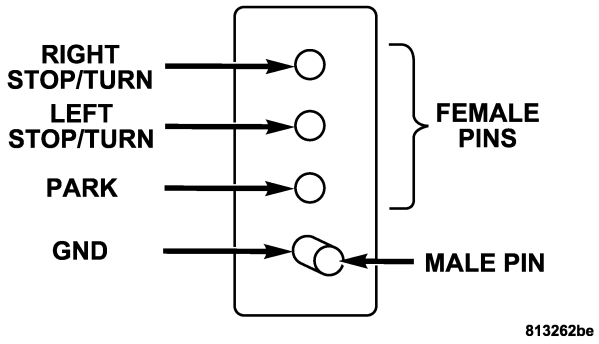
Trailer Tow Wiring

The Trailer Tow Package includes a 4 and 7 pin wiring harness located at the rear underbody of the vehicle.

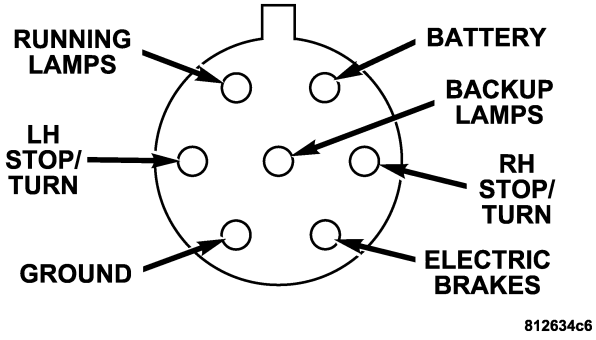
NOTE: Connect trailer lighting and brakes using factory harnesses only. Do not cut or splice wiring to the brake circuits.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

The electrical connections are all complete to the vehicle but you must mate the harness to a trailer connector. Refer to the following illustrations.



4 - Pin Connector



7 - Pin Connector

Cooling System Tips—Trailer Towing

To reduce potential for engine and transmission overheating, take the following actions:

- *City Driving*

When stopped for short periods of time, put transmission in neutral and increase engine idle speed.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- *Highway Driving*
Reduce speed.

- *Air Conditioning*
Turn off temporarily.

- See Cooling System Operating information in the Maintenance section of this manual for more information.

To reduce potential for automatic transmission overheating, turn the "TOW/HAUL" feature on when driving in hilly areas or shift the transmission to Drive position 2 on more severe grades. Move the shift lever to the next lower position to eliminate excessive transmission shifting. This action will also reduce the possibility of transmission overheating and provide better engine braking.

SNOWPLOW

Dodge Dakota Models

NOTE: Do not use Dodge Dakota Models for snowplow applications.

WARNING!

Snowplows, winches, and other aftermarket equipment should not be added to the front end of your vehicle. The airbag crash sensors may be affected by the change in the front end structure. The airbags could deploy unexpectedly or could fail to deploy during a collision resulting in serious injury or death.

5

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION!

Using this vehicle for snowplow applications can cause damage to the vehicle.

WARNING!

Attaching a snowplow to this vehicle could adversely affect performance of the airbag system in an accident. Do not expect that the airbag will perform as described earlier in this manual

RECREATIONAL TOWING (BEHIND MOTORHOME, ETC.)

Recreational Towing 2WD Models

Recreational towing of 2WD models is not allowable. Towing the vehicle with the transmission in Neutral can cause severe transmission damage. Removal of the driveshaft for towing is not recommended since this allows transmission fluid to leak out.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Recreational Towing 4WD Models

CAUTION!
Internal damage to the transfer case will occur if a front or rear wheel lift is used when recreational towing.

NOTE: Both the NV233 and NV244 HD transfer cases must be shifted into Neutral (N) for recreational towing. The Neutral (N) selection button is located on the lower left hand corner of the 4WD Control Switch. Shifts into and out of transfer case Neutral (N) can take place with the selector switch in any mode position. Automatic Transmissions must be placed in P (Park) position for recreational towing. Manual Transmissions must be placed in gear (for example, 4th gear) for recreational towing.

Recreational Towing Procedure
Use the following procedure to prepare your vehicle for recreational towing.

CAUTION!
It is necessary to follow these steps to be certain that the transfer case is fully in Neutral (N) before recreational towing to prevent damage to internal parts.

1. Bring vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Shut engine OFF.
3. Place ignition key in the ON position.
4. Depress brake pedal.
5. Shift automatic transmission to Neutral (N) or depress clutch on manual transmission.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

6. Using the point of a ballpoint pen or similar object, depress the recessed transfer case Neutral (N) button for 4 seconds.

7. After shift is completed and the Neutral (N) light comes on release Neutral (N) button.

8. Start engine.

9. Shift automatic transmission into Reverse (R).

10. Release brake pedal for five seconds and ensure that there is no vehicle movement.

11. Repeat steps 9 and 10 with the transmission in Drive (D).

12. Shut engine OFF and place ignition key to the unlocked OFF position.

13. Shift automatic transmission into Park (P). Shift Manual transmissions into 4th gear.

14. Attach vehicle to tow vehicle with tow bar.

NOTE: Items 1 through 5 are requirements that must be met prior to depressing the Neutral (N) selection button, and must continue to be met until the 4 seconds elapses and the shift has been completed. If any of these requirements (with the exception of 3 - Key ON) are not met prior to depressing the Neutral (N) button or are no longer met during the 4 second timer, then the Neutral (N) indicator light will flash continuously until all requirements are met or until the Neutral (N) button is released.

NOTE: The ignition key must be ON for a shift to take place and for the position indicator lights to be operable. If the key in not ON, the shift will not take place and no position indicator lights will be on or flashing.

NOTE: Flashing neutral (N) position indicator light indicates that shift requirements have not been met.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION!

Damage to the transmission may occur if the transmission is shifted into Park (P) with the transfer case in Neutral (N) and the engine RUNNING. With the transfer case in Neutral (N) ensure that the engine is OFF prior to shifting the transmission into Park (P).

Returning to Normal Operation
Use the following procedure to prepare your vehicle for normal usage.

1. Bring vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Shut engine OFF.
3. Place ignition key in the ON position.
4. Depress brake pedal.
5. Shift automatic transmission to Neutral (N) or depress clutch on manual transmission.
6. Using the point of a ballpoint pen or similar object, depress the recessed transfer case Neutral (N) button for 1 second.
7. After the Neutral (N) indicator light turns off release the Neutral (N) button.
8. After the Neutral (N) button has been released the transfer case will shift to the position identified by the selector switch.
9. Shift automatic transmission into Drive (D), release the clutch on manual transmission.

NOTE: Items 1 through 5 are requirements that must be met prior to depressing the Neutral (N) selection button, and must continue to be met until 1 second elapses and the shift has been completed. If any of these requirements (with the exception of 3 - key ON) are not met prior to

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

depressing the Neutral (N) button or are no longer met during the 1 second time, then all of the mode position indicator lights will flash continuously until all requirements are met or until the Neutral (N) button is released.

NOTE: The ignition key must be ON for a shift to take place and for the position indicator lights to be operable. If the key is not ON, the shift will not take place and no position indicator lights will be on or flashing.

NOTE: Flashing neutral (N) position indicator light indicates that shift requirements have not been met.

WARNING!

You or others could be injured if you leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the Neutral (N) position without first fully engaging the parking brake. The transfer case Neutral (N) position disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain and will allow the vehicle to move despite the transmission position. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION!

- **Do not use a bumper mounted clamp-on tow bar on your vehicle. The bumper face bar will be damaged.**
- **Do not disconnect the rear driveshaft because fluid will leak from the transfer case and damage internal parts.**

TRACTION

When driving on wet or slushy roads, it is possible for a wedge of water to build up between the tire and road surface. This is known as hydroplaning and may cause partial or complete loss of vehicle control and stopping ability. To reduce this possibility, the following precautions should be observed:

1. Slow down during rainstorms or when roads are slushy.
2. Slow down if road has standing water or puddles.
3. Replace tires when tread wear indicators first become visible.
4. Keep tires properly inflated.
5. Maintain sufficient distance between your vehicle and the car in front to avoid a collision in a sudden stop.

EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION PLATE

The equipment Identification Plate is located on the hood inner surface.

The following information about your vehicle is displayed on this plate: Model, Wheelbase, Vehicle Identification Number, Truck Order Number, and code numbers with descriptions of all production and special equipment on the truck as shipped from the factory.

NOTE: Always refer to the Equipment Identification Plate When Ordering Parts.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WHAT TO DO IN EMERGENCIES

CONTENTS

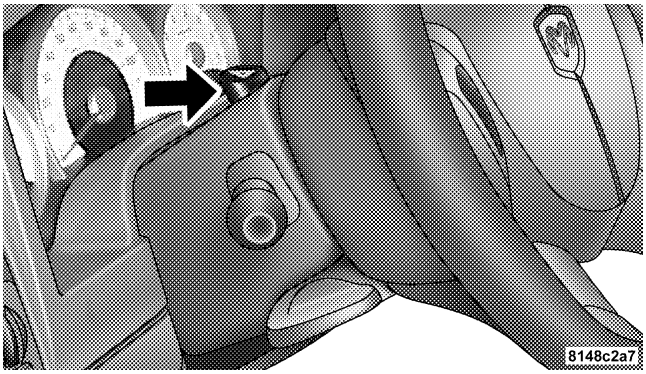
- ■ Hazard Warning Flasher 272
- ■ Adding Fuel 273
- ■ Changing A Flat Tire 274
  - □ Jack Location 274
  - □ Removing The Spare Tire 276
  - □ Tire Changing Procedure 278
- ■ Jump Starting 283
- ■ Emergency Tow Hooks — If Equipped 286
- ■ Towing A Disabled Vehicle 287
  - □ Four-Wheel Drive Vehicles 287
  - □ Two-Wheel Drive Vehicles 287

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

HAZARD WARNING FLASHER

The flasher switch is on the top of the steering column, just behind the steering wheel. Press the flasher switch and all front and rear directional signals will flash intermittently.

Press the switch a second time to turn off the emergency flashers.



This is an emergency warning system and should not be used when the vehicle is in motion. Use it when your vehicle is disabled and is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

If it is necessary to leave the vehicle to go for service, the flasher system will continue to operate with the ignition key removed and the vehicle locked.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

ADDING FUEL

If using a portable fuel container, it should have a flexible nozzle long enough to reach past the restriction in the fuel filler tube.

WARNING!

A fire may result if gasoline is pumped into a portable container that is in a vehicle or on a truck bed. You could be burned. Always place gas containers on the ground while filling.

WARNING!

Remove the gas cap slowly to prevent fuel spray from the filler neck which may cause injury.

The volatility of present gasolines may cause a build up of pressure in the fuel tank that may increase while you drive. This pressure can result in a spray of gasoline and/or vapors when you remove the cap from a hot vehicle. Removing the cap slowly allows the pressure to vent and prevents fuel spray.

Never allow any lit smoking materials near the vehicles while removing the cap or filling the tank.

Never add fuel to the vehicle when the engine is running.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

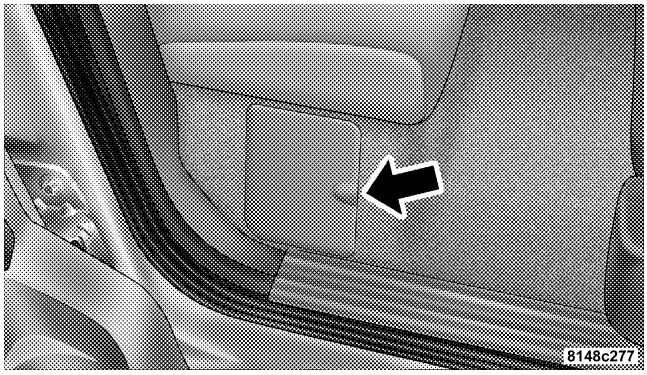
CHANGING A FLAT TIRE

Jack Location

In the Dakota, the scissor jack and tire changing tools for Club Cab models are stowed in a compartment under the rear passenger seat. Quad Cab model scissor jack and tire changing tools are accessed by lifting up the rear passenger seat.

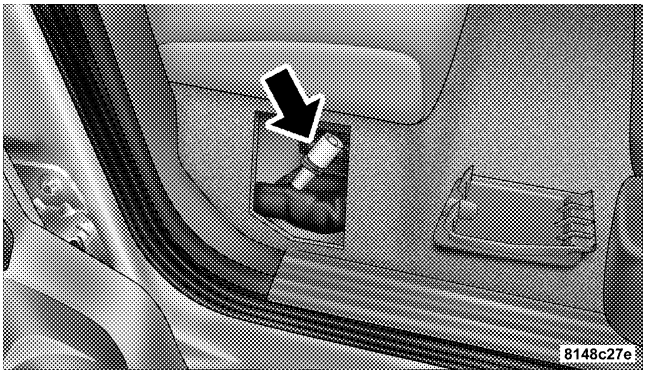
The jack is secured in place by turning the jack screw until the jack is secured into place.

A finger operated helper tool is provided to assist removal and stowage of the jack. This tool must be removed to operate the jack for changing the spare tire.

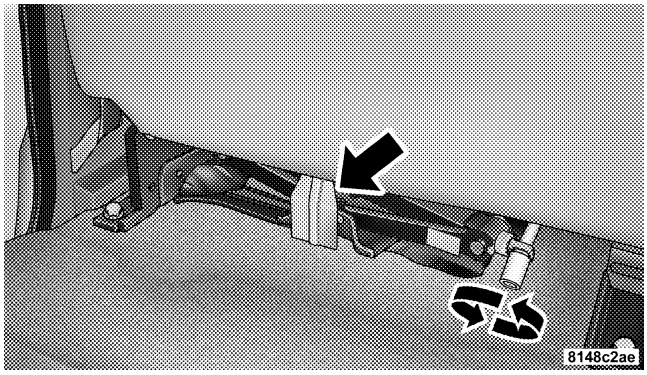


Jack Stowage Location Club Cab

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Jack Stowage Location Club Cab



Jack Stowage Location Quad Cab

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

The jack is designed as a tool for changing tires only. The jack should not be used to lift the vehicle for service purposes, unless suitable supports are placed under the vehicle as a safety measure. The vehicle should be jacked on a firm level surface only. Avoid ice or slippery areas.

Removing The Spare Tire

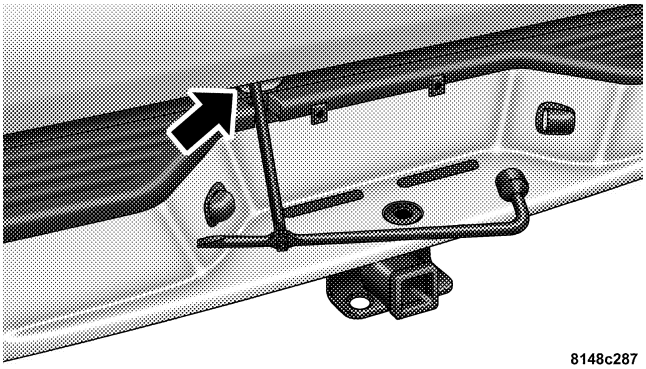
Remove the spare tire before attempting to jack the truck. Attach the wheel wrench to the jack extension tube. Insert the tube through the access hole in the rear bumper and into the winch mechanism tube. Rotate the wheel wrench handle counterclockwise until the spare tire is on the ground with enough cable slack to allow you to pull it out from under the vehicle. When the spare is clear, tilt the retainer at the end of the cable and pull it through the center of the wheel.

Steps for Removing the Spare Tire

- Remove the jack from the stowage compartment using the supplied finger assist tool.
- Remove the finger assist tool from jack and set aside until jack is stowed.
- Assemble the jack tools.
- Locate the tire carrier access hole on the rear bumper.
- Place assembled jack tool extension rod into the access hole in the direction of the arrow on the bumper trim.
- Rotate the tool counterclockwise to release and lower the spare tire to the ground so that it can be pulled from under the vehicle.

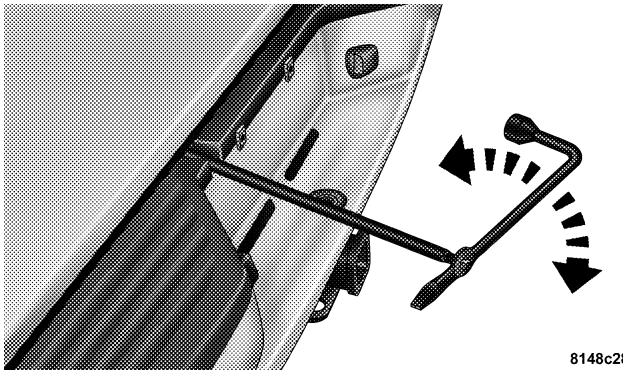
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Rotate clockwise to stow the spare tire.



8148c287

Inserting Lug Wrench and Extension

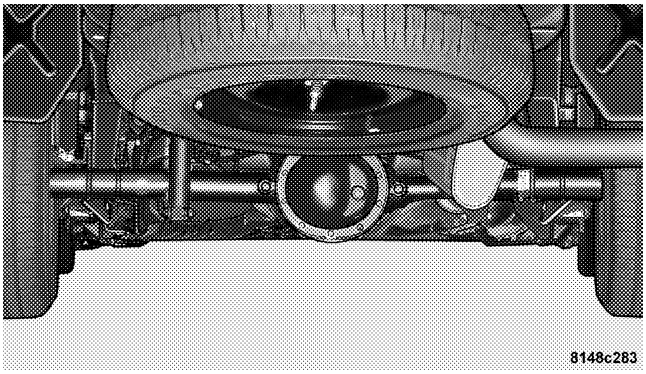


8148c28b

Turning Lug Wrench and Extension

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

It is recommended that you stow the flat or spare to avoid tangling the loose cable.



Spare Tire Stowage Location

NOTE: The winch mechanism is designed for use with the jack extension tube only. Use of an air wrench or other power tools is not recommended and can damage the winch.

Tire Changing Procedure

WARNING!

Getting under a jacked-up vehicle is dangerous. The vehicle could slip off the jack and fall on you. You could be crushed. Never get any part of your body under a vehicle that is on a jack. Never start or run the engine while the vehicle is on a jack. If you need to get under a raised vehicle, take it to a service center where it can be raised on a lift.

Do not raise this vehicle using a bumper jack. The scissor jack is designed as a tool for changing tires on this vehicle only. It is not recommended that the jack be used for service purposes or to lift more than one wheel at a time.

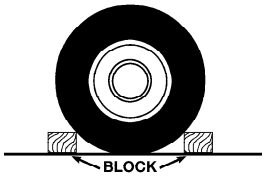
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Preparations
Park the vehicle on a firm level surface, avoiding ice or slippery areas. Set the parking brake and place the gear selector in PARK (automatic transmission). On Four Wheel Drive vehicles, shift the transfer case to the "4L" position.

WARNING!

Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

- Turn on the Hazard Warning Flasher.



- Block both the front and rear of the wheel diagonally opposite the jacking position. For example, if the right front wheel is being changed, block the left rear wheel.
- Passengers should not remain in the vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.

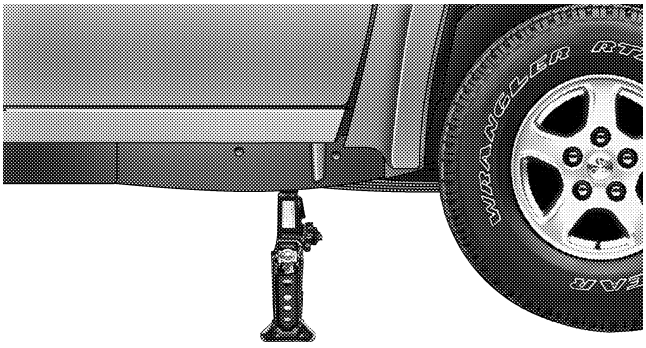
Instructions

1. Lower and remove the spare wheel, jack, and tools from stowage.

2. Using the wheel wrench, loosen, but do not remove, the wheel nuts by turning them counterclockwise one turn while the wheel is still on the ground.

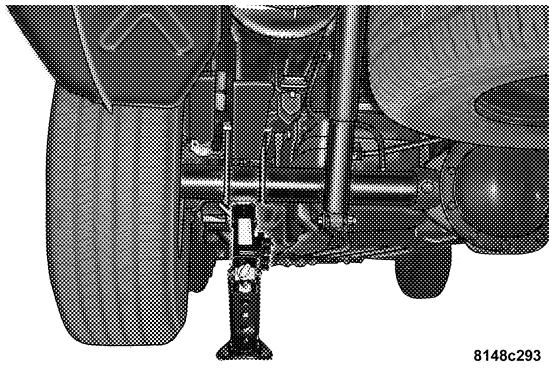
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

3. When changing a front wheel, place the jack under the frame rail behind the wheel. Locate the jack as far forward as possible on the straight part of the frame (prior to inboard transition. Operate the jack using the jack drive tube and the wheel wrench - the tube extension, may be used but is not required.



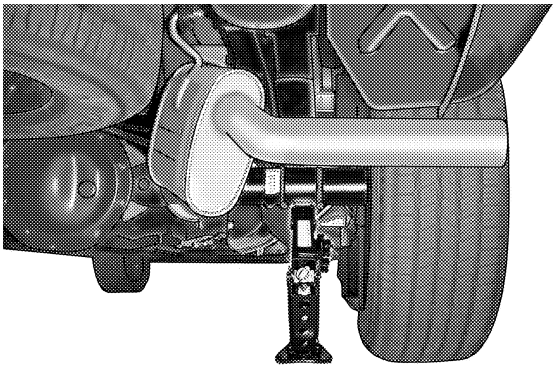
Positioning of the Jack Front Wheels

When changing a rear wheel, assemble the jack drive tube to the jack and connect the drive tube to the extension tube. Place the jack under the axle in the positions shown with the drive tubes extending to the rear. Connect the jack tube extension and wheel wrench.



Left Rear Jacking Location

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Right Rear Jacking Location

Before raising the wheel off the ground, make sure that the jack will not damage surrounding truck parts and adjust the jack position as required.

4. By rotating the wheel wrench clockwise, raise the vehicle until the wheel just clears the surface.

WARNING!

Raising the vehicle higher than necessary can make the vehicle unstable and cause an accident. It could slip off the jack and hurt someone near it. Raise the vehicle only enough to remove the tire.

5. Remove the wheel nuts and pull the wheel off. Install the spare wheel and wheel nuts with the cone shaped end of the nuts toward the wheel. Lightly tighten the nuts. To avoid risk of forcing the vehicle off the jack, do not fully tighten the nuts until the vehicle has been lowered.

NOTE: Do not oil wheel studs. For chrome wheels, do not substitute with chrome plated wheel nuts.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

6. Using the wheel wrench, finish tightening the nuts in a crisscross pattern. Correct nut tightness is 85-115 ft. lbs. (115-155 N·m) torque. If in doubt about the correct tightness, have them checked with a torque wrench by your dealer or at a service station.

WARNING!

A loose tire or jack thrown forward in a collision or hard stop could injure someone in the vehicle. Always stow the jack, tools and the extra tire and wheel in the places provided.

7. Lower the jack to its fully closed position. Stow the replaced tire, jack, and tools as previously described.

8. Adjust the tire pressure when possible.

NOTE: Do not oil wheel studs. For chrome wheels, do not substitute with chrome plated wheel nuts.

WARNING!

Carefully follow these tire changing warnings to help prevent personal injury or damage to your vehicle:

- **Always park on a firm, level surface as far from the edge of the roadway as possible before raising the vehicle.**
- **Block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be raised.**
- **Apply the parking brake firmly before jacking.**
- **Never start the engine with the vehicle on a jack.**
- **Do not let anyone sit in the vehicle when it is on a jack.**
- **Do not get under the vehicle when it is on a jack.**
- **Only use the jack in the positions indicated.**
- **If working on or near a roadway, be extremely careful of motor traffic.**
- **To assure that spare tires, flat or inflated are securely stowed, spares must be stowed with the value stem facing the ground.**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

To Stow The Flat Or Spare
Turn the wheel so that the valve stem is down. Slide the wheel retainer through the center of the wheel and position it properly across the wheel opening.

For convenience in checking the spare tire inflation, stow with the valve stem toward the rear of the vehicle.

Rotate the winch mechanism until the wheel is drawn into place against the underside of the vehicle. Continue to rotate until you feel the winch mechanism slip or click 3 times. It cannot be overtightened. Push against the tire several times to be sure it is firmly in place.

To Stow the Flat or Spare: Wheel retainer does not fit through the center of the aluminum wheel. The tire must be stored in a safe manner in the bed of the truck.

JUMP STARTING

WARNING!

- **Battery fluid is a corrosive acid solution; do not allow battery fluid to contact eyes, skin or clothing. Don't lean over battery when attaching clamps or allow the clamps to touch each other. If acid splashes in eyes or on skin, flush the contaminated area immediately with large quantities of water.**
- **A battery generates hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Keep flame or spark away from the vent holes. Do not use a booster battery or any other booster source with an output that exceeds 12 volts.**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Check the Battery Test Indicator (if equipped). If a light or bright colored dot is visible in the indicator (if equipped), DO NOT jump-start the battery.

If the indicator (if equipped) is dark or shows a green dot, proceed as follows:

1. Wear eye protection and remove all metal jewelry such as watch bands or bracelets which might make an unintended electrical contact.

2. Park the booster vehicle within cable reach but without letting the vehicles touch. Set the parking brake, place the automatic transmission in PARK and turn the ignition OFF on both vehicles.

3. Turn OFF heater, radio and all unnecessary electrical loads.

4. Connect one end of a jumper cable to the positive terminal of the booster battery. Connect the other end of the same cable to the positive terminal of the discharged battery.

WARNING!

Do not permit vehicles to touch each other as this could establish a ground connection and personal injury could result.

5. Connect the other cable, first to the negative terminal of the booster battery and then to the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery. Make sure you have a good contact on the engine.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

Do not connect the cable to the negative post of the discharge battery. The resulting electrical spark could cause the battery to explode.

During cold weather when temperatures are below freezing point, electrolyte in a discharged battery may freeze. Do not attempt jump starting because the battery could rupture or explode. The battery temperature must be brought up above freezing point before attempting jump start.

6. Start the engine in the vehicle which has the booster battery, let the engine idle a few minutes, then start the engine in the vehicle with the discharged battery.

7. When removing the jumper cables, reverse the above sequence exactly. Be careful of the moving belts and fan.

WARNING!

Any procedure other than above could result in:

1. Personal injury caused by electrolyte squirting out the battery vent;

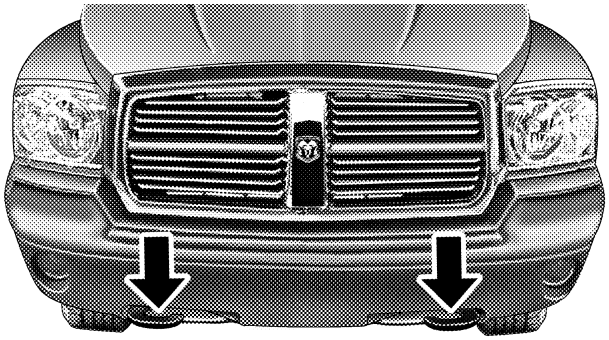
2. Personal injury or property damage due to battery explosion;

3. Damage to charging system of booster vehicle or of immobilized vehicle.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

EMERGENCY TOW HOOKS — IF EQUIPPED

Your vehicle may be equipped with emergency tow hooks.



8148c2b9

WARNING!

Chains are not recommended for freeing a stuck vehicle. Chains may break, causing serious injury or death.

WARNING!

Stand clear of vehicles when pulling with tow hooks. Tow straps and chains may break, causing serious injury.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION!

Tow hooks are for emergency use only, to rescue a vehicle stranded off road. Do not use tow hooks for tow truck hookup or highway towing. You could damage your vehicle.

TOWING A DISABLED VEHICLE

Proper towing or lifting equipment is required to prevent damage to your vehicle. Use of safety chains is recommended. **Attach towing device to main structural members of the vehicle — not to bumpers or associated brackets. State and local laws applying to vehicles under tow must be observed.**

Four-Wheel Drive Vehicles

The manufacturer recommends towing with all wheels **OFF** the ground. Acceptable methods are to tow the vehicle on a flatbed or with one end of the vehicle raised and the opposite end on a towing dolly.

Two-Wheel Drive Vehicles

Provided that the transmission is operable, tow with the transmission in Neutral and the ignition key in the OFF position along with the front wheels raised and the rear wheels on the ground. The speed must not exceed 30 mph (50 km/h) and the distance must not exceed 15 miles (25 km).

If the vehicle is to be towed more than 15 miles (25 km), it must be towed on a flatbed, or with the rear wheels raised and the front wheels on the ground, or with the front end raised and the rear wheels on a towing dolly.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTE: Towing the vehicle at more than 30 mph (50 km/h) or for more than 15 miles (25 km) can cause severe transmission damage.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

MAINTAINING YOUR VEHICLE

CONTENTS

■ Engine Compartment 3.7L V6 292
■ Engine Compartment 4.7L/4.7HO V-8 293
■ Onboard Diagnostic System — OBD II 294
  □ Loose Fuel Filler Cap Message 295
■ Emissions Inspection And Maintenance Programs 295
■ Replacement Parts 297
■ Dealer Service 297
■ Maintenance Procedures 298
  □ Engine Oil 298
  □ Engine Oil Filter 302
  □ Drive Belts — Check Condition And Tensioner 302
  □ Spark Plugs 303
  □ Engine Air Cleaner Filter 303
  □ Engine Fuel Filter 304
  □ Catalytic Converter 304
  □ Maintenance-Free Battery 306

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- □ Air Conditioner Maintenance 307
- □ Power Steering — Fluid Check 308
- □ Front Suspension Ball Joints 309
- □ Drive Shaft Constant Velocity Joints 309
- □ Body Lubrication 309
- □ Windshield Wiper Blades 310
- □ Windshield Washers 310
- □ Exhaust System 311
- □ Cooling System 312
- □ Emission Related Components 316
- □ Brake System 318
- □ Clutch Hydraulic System 319
- □ Manual Transmission 320
- □ Automatic Transmission 320
- □ Transfer Case 323
- □ Axles 323
- □ Selection Of Lubricating Grease 324
- □ Appearance Care And Protection From Corrosion 325

■ Power Distribution Center (Fuse/Relay) 328

■ Vehicle Storage 329

■ Replacement Light Bulbs 330

■ Bulb Replacement 330

- □ Headlamps 330
- □ Front Park And Turn Signal Lamp. 334
- □ Rear Side Marker, Taillamps/Stoplamp, And Turn Signal Bulbs — Replacement 336

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

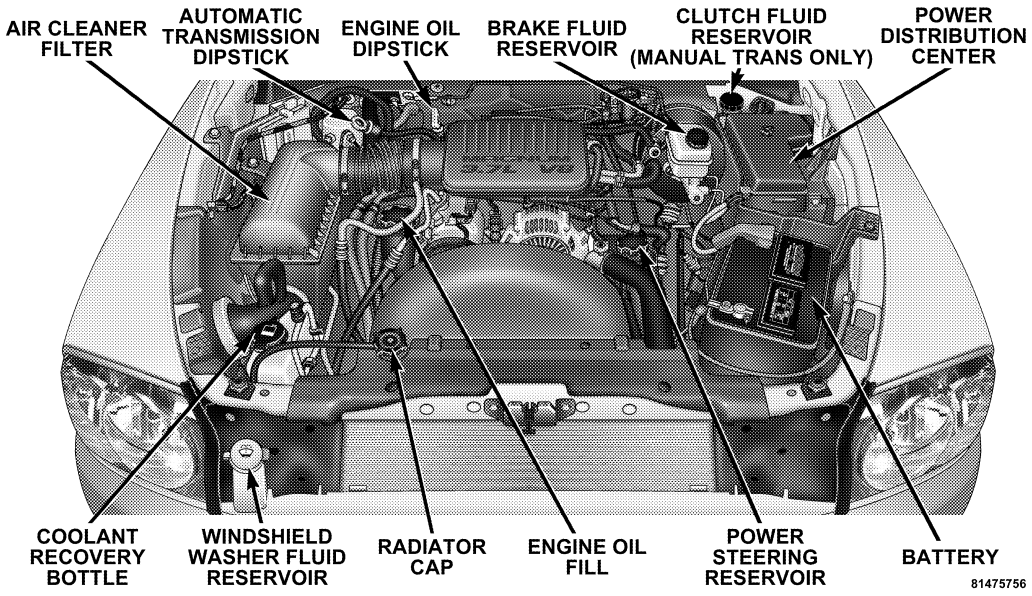
- □ Center High-Mounted Stoplamp And Cargo Lamp 338
- □ License Lamps 341
- □ Fog Lamps 342

■ Fluids And Capacities 343

■ Recommended Fluids, Lubricants And Genuine Parts 344
- □ Engine 344
- □ Chassis 345

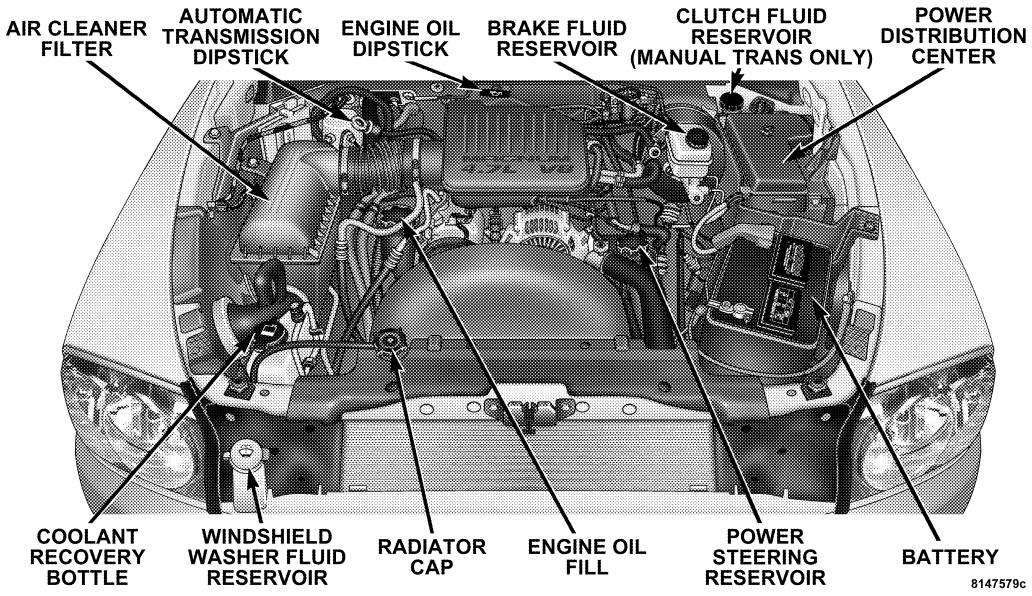
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

ENGINE COMPARTMENT 3.7L V6



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

ENGINE COMPARTMENT 4.7L/4.7HO V-8



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

ONBOARD DIAGNOSTIC SYSTEM — OBD II

Your vehicle is equipped with a sophisticated onboard diagnostic system called OBD II. This system monitors the performance of the emissions, engine, and automatic transmission control systems. When these systems are operating properly, your vehicle will provide excellent performance and fuel economy, as well as engine emissions well within current government regulations.

If any of these systems require service, the OBD II system will turn on the "Malfunction Indicator Light." It will also store diagnostic codes and other information to assist your service technician in making repairs. Although your vehicle will usually be drivable and not need towing, see your dealer for service as soon as possible.

CAUTION!

- **Prolonged driving with the "Malfunction Indicator Light" on could cause further damage to the emission control system. It could also affect fuel economy and driveability. The vehicle must be serviced before any emissions tests can be performed.**
- **If the "Malfunction Indicator Light" is flashing while the engine is running, severe catalytic converter damage and power loss will soon occur. Immediate service is required.**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Loose Fuel Filler Cap Message

After fuel is added, the vehicle diagnostic system can determine if the fuel filler cap is loose, improperly installed, or damaged. A loose fuel filler cap message will be displayed in the instrument cluster. Tighten the gas cap until a "clicking" sound is heard. This is an indication that the gas cap is properly tightened. Press the odometer reset button to turn the message off. If the problem persists, the message will appear the next time the vehicle is started. This might indicate a damaged cap. If the problem is detected twice in a row, the system will turn on the Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL). Resolving the problem will turn the MIL light off.

EMISSIONS INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE PROGRAMS

In some localities, it may be a legal requirement to pass an inspection of your vehicle's emissions control system. Failure to pass could prevent vehicle registration.

For states which have an I/M (Inspection and Maintenance) requirement, this check verifies the following: the MIL (Malfunction Indicator Lamp) is functioning and is not on when the engine is running, and that the OBD (On Board Diagnostic) system is ready for testing.

Normally, the OBD system will be ready. The OBD system may **not** be ready if your vehicle was recently serviced, if you recently had a dead battery, or a battery replacement. If the OBD system should be determined not ready for the I/M test, your vehicle may fail the test.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Your vehicle has a simple ignition key actuated test which you can use prior to going to the test station. To check if your vehicle's OBD system is ready, you must do the following:

1. Insert your ignition key into the ignition switch.

2. Turn the ignition to the ON position, but do not crank or start the engine.

3. If you crank or start the engine, you will have to start this test over.

4. As soon as you turn your key to the ON position, you will see your MIL symbol come on as part of a normal bulb check.

5. Approximately 15 seconds later, one of two things will happen:

   a. The MIL light will blink for approximately 5 seconds and then remain on until the first engine crank or the key is turned off. This means that your vehicle's OBD system is **not ready** and you should **not** proceed to the I/M station.

   b. The MIL light will remain fully illuminated until the first engine crank or the key is turned off. This means that your vehicle's OBD system is **ready** and you can proceed to the I/M station.

If your OBD system is **not ready,** you should see your dealer or repair facility. If your vehicle was recently serviced or had a battery failure or replacement, you may need to do nothing more than drive your vehicle as you normally would in order for your OBD system to update. A recheck with the above test routine may then indicate that the system is now ready.

Regardless of whether your vehicle's OBD system is ready or not ready, if the MIL symbol is illuminated during normal vehicle operation, you should have your

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

vehicle serviced before going to the I/M station. The I/M station can fail your vehicle because the MIL symbol is on with the engine running.

REPLACEMENT PARTS

Use of genuine Mopar® parts for normal/scheduled maintenance and repairs is highly recommended to insure the designed performance. Damage or failures caused by the use of non-Mopar® parts for maintenance and repairs will not be covered by the manufacturer's warranty.

DEALER SERVICE

Your dealer has the qualified service personnel, special tools and equipment to perform all service operations in an expert manner. Service manuals are available which include detailed service information for your vehicle. Refer to these manuals before attempting any procedure yourself.

NOTE: Intentional tampering with emissions control systems can result in civil penalties being assessed against you.

WARNING!

You can be badly injured working on or around a motor vehicle. Do only that service work for which you have the knowledge and the proper equipment. If you have any doubt about your ability to perform a service job, take your vehicle to a competent mechanic.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES

The pages that follow contain the **required** maintenance services determined by the engineers who designed your vehicle.

Besides the maintenance items for which there are fixed maintenance intervals, there are other items that should operate satisfactorily without periodic maintenance. However, if a malfunction of these items does occur, it could adversely affect the engine or vehicle performance. These items should be inspected if a malfunction is observed or suspected.

Engine Oil

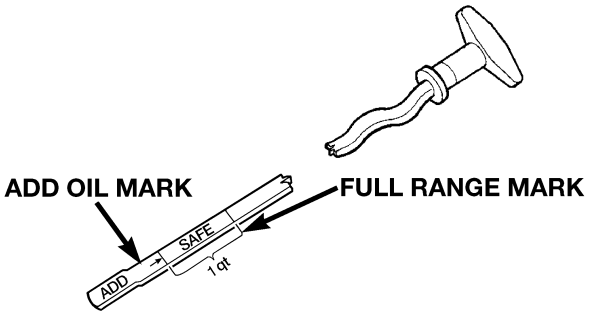
Checking Engine Oil Level

To assure proper lubrication of your vehicle's engine, the engine oil must be maintained at the correct level. The best time to check the engine oil level is about 5 minutes after a fully warmed up engine is shut off or before starting the engine after it has sat overnight.

1. Position the vehicle on a level surface.
2. Turn Off the engine and allow approximately 5 minutes for the oil to settle to the bottom of the crankcase.
3. Remove the engine oil level indicator (dipstick).
4. Wipe the engine oil level indicator (dipstick) clean.
5. Install the engine oil level indicator (dipstick) and make sure it is seated in the tube.
6. Remove the engine oil level indicator (dipstick), keeping the handle above the tip, and read the oil level on the engine oil level indicator (dipstick).

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

7. Add oil only if the level is below the "SAFE" range (at or below the "ADD" mark) on the engine oil level indicator (dipstick). Adding one quart of oil when the reading is at the ADD mark will result in a reading at the top of the SAFE zone on these engines.



80c0715e

CAUTION!

Overfilling or underfilling the crankcase will cause oil aeration or loss of oil pressure. This could damage your engine.

Frequency Of Oil Change

Road conditions and your style of driving affect the interval at which your oil should be changed. Check the following to determine if **ANY** apply to you:

- Day or night temperatures are below 32°F (0°C).
- Stop and Go driving.
- Extensive engine idling.
- Driving in dusty conditions.
- Short trips of less than 10 miles (16.2 km).

7

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- More than 50% of your driving is at sustained high speeds during hot weather, above 90°F (32°C).
- Trailer towing, Taxi, Police or delivery service (commercial service).
- Off-Road or desert operation.
- **If equipped for and operating with E-85 (ethanol) fuel.**

NOTE: If **ANY** of these apply to you then change your engine oil every 3,000 miles (5 000 km) or 3 months, whichever comes first and follow schedule "B" of the "Maintenance Schedules" section of this manual.

If **NONE** of these apply to you, then change your engine oil every 6,000 miles (10 000 km) or 6 months, whichever comes first and follow schedule "A" of the "Maintenance Schedules" section of this manual.

4x4 Models, If Used Primarily For Off-Road Operation
Every 50 hours of use.

Dusty Conditions
Driving through dust-laden air increases the problems of keeping abrasive materials out of the engine. Under these conditions, special attention should be given to the engine air cleaner. The crankcase ventilation system should also be checked periodically. Make sure that these units are always clean. This will tend to reduce to a minimum the amount of abrasive material that may enter the engine.

Engine Oil Selection
For best performance and maximum protection under all types of operating conditions, the manufacture only recommends engine oils that are API certified and meet the requirements of DaimlerChrysler Material Standard MS-6395. Use Mopar or an equivalent oil meeting the specification MS-6395.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine Oil Identification (API) Symbol
There is a symbol to aid you in selecting the proper engine oil.

This symbol means that the oil has been certified by the American Petroleum Institute (API). The manufacture only recommends API Certified engine oils that meet the requirements of DaimlerChrysler Material Standard MS-6395. Use Mopar or an equivalent oil meeting the specification MS-6395.

Engine Oil Viscosity (SAE Grade)
SAE 5W-30 engine oil is recommended for all operating temperatures. This engine oil improves low temperature starting and vehicle fuel economy. Refer to your engine oil filler cap for the recommended engine oil viscosity for your vehicle.

For information on engine oil filler cap location, see the Engine Compartment illustration in this section.

Lubricants which do not have both, the engine oil certification mark and the correct SAE viscosity grade number should not be used.

Synthetic Engine Oils
There are a number of engine oils being promoted as either synthetic or semi-synthetic. If you chose to use such a product, use **only** those oils that meet the American Petroleum Institute (API) and SAE viscosity standard. Follow the service schedule that describes your driving type.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Materials Added to Engine Oils

The manufacture strongly recommends against the addition of any additives (other than leak detection dyes) to the engine oil. Engine oil is an engineered product and it's performance may be impaired by supplemental additives.

Disposing of Used Engine Oil And Oil Filters

Care should be taken in disposing of used engine oil and oil filters from your vehicle. Used oil and oil filters, indiscriminately discarded, can present a problem to the environment. Contact your dealer, service station, or governmental agency for advice on how and where used oil and oil filters can be safely discarded in your area.

Engine Oil Filter

The engine oil filter should be replaced at every engine oil change.

Engine Oil Filter Selection

The manufacturer's engines have a full-flow type oil filter. Use a filter of this type for replacement. The quality of replacement filters varies considerably. Only high quality filters should be used to assure most efficient service. Mopar® Engine Oil Filters are a high quality oil filter and are recommended.

Drive Belts — Check Condition and Tensioner

Belt tension is controlled by means of an automatic tensioner. No belt tension adjustments are required. However, belt and belt tensioner condition should be inspected at the specified intervals, and replaced if required. See your authorized dealer for service

At the mileage indicated in the maintenance schedule, all belts and tensioner should be checked for condition. Improper belt tension can cause belt slippage and failure.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Belts should be inspected for evidence of cuts, cracks, glazing, or frayed cords and replaced if there is indication of damage which could result in belt failure. Low generator belt tension can cause battery failure.

Also check belt routing to make sure there is no interference between the belts and other engine components.

Spark Plugs

Spark plugs must fire properly to assure proper engine performance and emission control. The plugs installed in your vehicle should operate satisfactorily in normal service for the mileage indicated in the Maintenance Chart. New plugs should be installed at this mileage. The entire set should be replaced if there is any malfunction due to a faulty spark plug. Check the Vehicle Emissions Control Information label for the proper type of spark plug for your vehicle.

CAUTION!

When replacing plugs, do not overtighten. You could damage them and cause them to leak.

Engine Air Cleaner Filter

Under normal driving conditions, replace the air filter at the intervals shown on Schedule "A". If, however, you drive the vehicle frequently under dusty or severe conditions, the filter element should be inspected periodically and replaced if necessary at the intervals shown on Schedule "B".

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

The air cleaner can provide a measure of protection in the case of engine backfire. Do not remove the air cleaner unless such removal is necessary for repair or maintenance. Make sure that no one is near the engine compartment before starting the vehicle with the air cleaner removed. Failure to do so can result in serious personal injury.

Engine Fuel Filter

A plugged fuel filter can cause stalling, limit the speed at which a vehicle can be driven or cause hard starting. Should an excessive amount of dirt accumulate in the fuel tank, frequent filter replacement may be necessary.

Catalytic Converter

The catalytic converter requires the use of unleaded fuel only. Leaded gasoline will destroy the effectiveness of the catalyst as an emission control device.

Under normal operating conditions, the catalytic converter will not require maintenance. However, it is important to keep the engine properly tuned to assure proper catalyst operation and prevent possible catalyst damage.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION!

Damage to the catalytic converter can result if your vehicle is not kept in proper operating condition. In the event of engine malfunction, particularly involving engine misfire or other apparent loss of performance, have your vehicle serviced promptly. Continued operation of your vehicle with a severe malfunction could cause the converter to overheat, resulting in possible damage to the converter and the vehicle.

NOTE: Intentional tampering with emissions control systems can result in civil penalties being assessed against you.

WARNING!

A hot exhaust system can start a fire if you park over materials that can burn. Such materials might be grass or leaves coming into contact with your exhaust system. Do not park or operate your vehicle in areas where your exhaust system can contact anything that can burn.

In unusual situations involving grossly malfunctioning engine operation, a scorching odor may indicate severe and abnormal catalyst overheating. If this occurs, the vehicle should be stopped, the engine shut off and the vehicle allowed to cool. Thereafter, service, including a tune-up to manufacturer's specifications, should be obtained immediately.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

To minimize the possibility of catalyst damage:

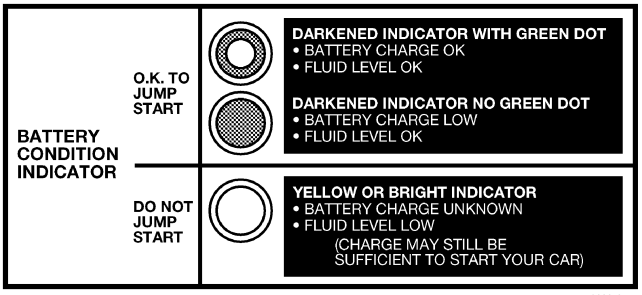
- Do not shut off the engine or interrupt the ignition when the transmission is in gear and the vehicle is in motion.
- Do not try to start engine by pushing or towing the vehicle.
- Do not idle the engine with any spark plug wires disconnected or removed, such as when diagnostic testing, or for prolonged periods during very rough idling or malfunctioning operating conditions.

Maintenance-Free Battery

All Dodge trucks are equipped with maintenance-free batteries. You will never have to add water, nor is periodic maintenance required.

WARNING!

Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Always wash hands after handling the battery.



Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

To determine the battery charge, check the battery test indicator (if equipped) on top of the battery. Refer to the illustration.

CAUTION!

It is essential when replacing the cables on the battery that the positive cable is attached to the positive post and the negative cable is attached to the negative post. Battery posts are marked (+) positive and negative (-) and identified on the battery case. Also, if a "fast charger" is used while battery is in the vehicle, disconnect both vehicle battery cables before connecting the charger to battery. Do not use a "fast charger" to provide starting voltage.

Air Conditioner Maintenance

For best possible performance, your air conditioner should be checked and serviced by an Authorized Dealer at the start of each warm season. This service should include cleaning of the condenser fins and a performance test. Drive belt tension should also be checked at this time.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

- **Use only refrigerants and compressor lubricants approved by the manufacturer for your air conditioning system. Some unapproved refrigerants are flammable and can explode, injuring you. Other unapproved refrigerants or lubricants can cause the system to fail, requiring costly repairs. Refer to Section 3 of the Warranty Information book for further warranty information.**
- **The air conditioning system contains refrigerant under high pressure. To avoid risk of personal injury or damage to the system, adding refrigerant or any repair requiring lines to be disconnected should be done by an experienced repairman.**

Refrigerant Recovery and Recycling

R-134a Air Conditioning Refrigerant is a hydrofluorocarbon (HFC) that is endorsed by the Environmental Protection Agency and is an ozone-saving product. However, the manufacturer recommends that air conditioning service be performed by dealers or other service facilities using recovery and recycling equipment.

Power Steering — Fluid Check

Checking the power steering fluid level at a defined service interval is not required. The fluid should only be checked if a leak is suspected, abnormal noises are apparent, and/or the system is not functioning as anticipated. Coordinate inspection efforts through a certified DaimlerChrysler Dealership."

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

Fluid level should be checked on a level surface and with the engine off to prevent injury from moving parts and to insure accurate fluid level reading. Do not overfill. Use only manufacturers recommended power steering fluid.

If necessary, add fluid to restore to the proper indicated level. With a clean cloth, wipe any spilled fluid from all surfaces. Refer to Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Genuine Parts for correct fluid type.

Front Suspension Ball Joints

The ball joints and seals should be inspected whenever the vehicle is serviced for other reasons. Damaged seals should be replaced to prevent leakage or contamination of the grease.

Drive Shaft Constant Velocity Joints

All four wheel drive models are equipped with four constant velocity joints. Periodic lubrication of these joints is not required. However, the joint boot should be inspected for external leakage or damage periodically. If external leakage or damage is evident, the joint boot and grease should be replaced immediately. Continued operation could result in failure of the joint due to water and dirt contamination of the grease. This would require complete replacement of the joint assembly. Refer to the Service Manual for the detailed replacement procedure.

Body Lubrication

Locks and all body pivot points, including such items as seat tracks, doors and hood hinges, should be lubricated periodically to assure quiet, easy operation and to protect against rust and wear. Prior to the application of any lubricant, the parts concerned should be wiped clean to remove dust and grit; after lubricating excess oil and grease should be removed. Particular attention should

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

also be given to hood latching components to insure proper function. When performing other underhood services, the hood latch, release mechanism and safety catch should be cleaned and lubricated.

The external lock cylinders should be lubricated twice a year, preferably in the fall and spring. Apply a small amount of a high quality lubricant such as Mopar® Lock Cylinder Lubricant directly into the lock cylinder.

Windshield Wiper Blades

The rubber edges of the wiper blades and the windshield should be cleaned periodically with a sponge or soft cloth and a mild nonabrasive cleaner. This will remove accumulations of salt or road film.

Operation of the wipers on dry glass for long periods may cause deterioration of the wiper blades. Always use washer fluid when using the wipers to remove salt or dirt from a dry windshield.

Avoid using the wiper blades to remove frost or ice from the windshield. Keep the blade rubber out of contact with petroleum products such as engine oil, gasoline, etc.

Windshield Washers

The fluid reservoir should be checked for fluid level at regular intervals. When freezing weather is anticipated, flush out the water in the reservoir by operating the system. Fill the reservoir with windshield washer antifreeze (not radiator antifreeze), and operate the system for a few seconds to flush out the residual water.

To prevent freeze-up of your windshield washer system in cold weather, select a solution or mixture that meets or exceeds the temperature range of your climate. This rating information can be found on most washer fluid containers.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

Commercially available windshield washer solvents are flammable. They could ignite and burn you. Care must be exercised when filling or working around the washer solution.

After the engine has warmed, operate the defroster for a few minutes to reduce the possibility of smearing or freezing the fluid on the cold windshield. Mopar® All Weather Windshield Washer Solution used with water as directed on the container, aids cleaning action, reduces freezing point to avoid line clogging, and is not harmful to paint or trim.

Exhaust System

The best protection against carbon monoxide entry into the vehicle body is a properly maintained engine exhaust system.

Whenever a change is noticed in the sound of the exhaust system, when exhaust fumes can be detected inside the vehicle, or when the underside or rear of the vehicle is damaged, have a competent mechanic inspect the complete exhaust system and adjacent body areas for broken, damaged, deteriorated, or mispositioned parts. Open seams or loose connections could permit exhaust fumes to seep into the passenger compartment. In addition, inspect the exhaust system each time the vehicle is raised for lubrication or oil change. Replace as required.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

Exhaust gases can injure or kill. They contain carbon monoxide (CO) which is colorless and odorless. Breathing it can make you unconscious and can eventually poison you. To avoid breathing CO, follow the preceding safety tips.

Cooling System

Inspection

Coolant protection checks should be made at every 12 months (before the onset of freezing weather, where applicable). If coolant is dirty or rusty in appearance, the system should be drained, flushed and refilled with fresh coolant. Check face of radiator for any accumulation of bugs, leaves, etc. If dirty, clean the radiator core by gently spraying water from a garden hose at the back of the core. Check the coolant bottle tubing for condition and tightness of connection at coolant bottle and radiator. Inspect the entire system for leaks.

WARNING!

You or others can be badly burned by hot coolant or steam from your radiator. If you see or hear steam coming from under the hood don't open the hood until the radiator has had time to cool. If you open the hood and see steam or hot coolant escaping from the radiator, don't touch anything. Get away quickly. Never try to open a pressure cap when the radiator is hot.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Cooling System Maintenance
At the intervals shown in the Maintenance Schedules section of this manual, the system should be drained, flushed and refilled. See your authorized dealer for proper cooling system maintenance.

Cooling System — Drain, Flush And Refill
If the solution is dirty and contains a considerable amount of sediment, it should be cleaned and flushed. See your authorized dealer for proper draining, flushing and refilling of your vehicle's cooling system.

Disposal of Used Engine Coolant
Used ethylene glycol based engine coolant is a regulated substance requiring proper disposal. Check with your local authorities to determine the disposal rules for your community. Do not store ethylene glycol based engine coolant in open containers or allow it to remain in puddles on the ground. Prevent ingestion by animals and children. If ingested, contact a physician or poison control specialist in your area. Clean up any ground spills immediately.

Recommended Engine Coolant
This vehicle has been factory filled with an Ethylene Glycol based engine coolant with long life corrosion inhibitors (called HOAT, for Hybrid Organic Additive Technology). Follow the "Maintenance Schedule" for the recommended coolant change intervals. Refer to Recommended Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts for correct fluid type.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION!

Mixing of coolants other than specified (non-HOAT), may result in engine damage and decreased corrosion protection. If a non-HOAT coolant is introduced into the cooling system in an emergency, it should be replaced with the specified coolant as soon as possible.

Do not use plain water alone or alcohol base antifreeze products. Do not use additional rust inhibitors or antirust products, as they may not be compatible with the radiator coolant and may plug the radiator.

This vehicle has not been designed for use with Propylene Glycol based coolants. Use of Propylene Glycol based coolants is not recommended.

Adding Coolant

When adding coolant, or refilling the system, a minimum solution of 50% recommended HOAT ethylene glycol engine coolant (antifreeze) and distilled water should be used. Use higher concentrations (not to exceed 70%) if temperatures below −34°F (−37°C) are anticipated.

Use only high purity water such as distilled or deionized water when mixing the water/engine coolant solution. The use of lower quality water will reduce the amount of corrosion protection in the engine cooling system.

Please note that it is the owner's responsibility to maintain the proper level of protection against freezing according to the temperatures occurring in the area where the vehicle is operated.

NOTE: Mixing coolant types will decrease the life of the engine coolant and will require more frequent coolant changes.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

Never add coolant to the radiator when the engine is overheated. Do not loosen or remove pressure cap to cool overheated engine. The coolant is under pressure and severe scalding could result.

Coolant Pressure Cap

The coolant pressure cap must be fully tightened to prevent loss of coolant, and to insure that coolant will return to the radiator from the coolant bottle.

The pressure cap should be inspected and cleaned if there is any accumulation of foreign material on the sealing surfaces.

WARNING!

The warning words "DO NOT OPEN HOT" on the coolant pressure cap are a safety precaution. Heat causes pressure to build up in the cooling system. To prevent scalding or injury, do not remove the pressure cap when the system is hot or under pressure.

Coolant Level

The coolant bottle system provides a quick visual method for determining that the coolant level is adequate. With the engine idling, and warmed to normal operating temperature," the level of the coolant on the overflow bottle should be between the fluid level marks." Check the coolant level whenever the hood is raised.

The radiator normally remains completely full, so there is no need to remove the pressure cap except checking coolant freeze point or replacement with new antifreeze

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

coolant. Your service attendant should be advised of this. When additional coolant is needed to maintain the proper level, it should be added to the coolant bottle. Do not overfill.

Points To Remember

A. Do not overfill the coolant bottle.

B. Check coolant freeze point in the radiator and in the coolant bottle. If antifreeze needs to be added, contents of coolant bottle also must be protected against freezing.

C. If frequent coolant additions are required, or if the level in the coolant bottle does not drop when the engine cools, the cooling system should be pressure tested for leaks.

D. Maintain a minimum coolant concentration of 50% ethylene glycol and distilled water.

E. Make sure that the radiator and coolant bottle overflow hoses are not kinked or obstructed.

F. Keep the front of the radiator clean. If your vehicle is equipped with air conditioning, keep the front of the condenser clean also.

G. The thermostat should not be changed for summer or winter operation. If replacement is ever necessary, install ONLY the correct type thermostat. Other designs may result in unsatisfactory cooling performance.

Emission Related Components

Fuel System Hoses And Vapor/Vacuum Harnesses
When the vehicle is serviced for scheduled maintenance, inspect surface of hoses and nylon tubing for evidence of heat and mechanical damage. Hard and brittle rubber, cracking, checking, tears, cuts, abrasions, and excessive swelling suggest deterioration of the rubber. Particular

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

attention should be given to examining hose surfaces nearest to high heat sources, such as the exhaust manifold.

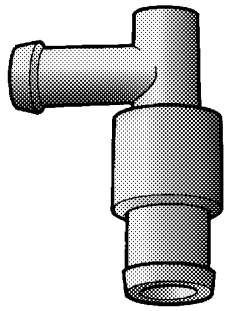
Insure nylon tubing in these areas has not melted or collapsed.

Inspect all hose clamps and couplings to make sure they are secure and no leaks are present.

You are urged to use only the manufacturer's specified hoses and clamps, or their equivalent in material and specification, in any fuel system servicing. It is mandatory to replace all clamps that have been loosened or removed during service. Care should be taken in installing new clamps to insure they are properly torqued.

Positive Crankcase Ventilation (PCV) Valve

Proper operation of the crankcase ventilation system requires that the PCV valve be free of sticking or plugging because of deposits. Deposits can accumulate in the PCV valve and passage with increasing mileage. Have the PCV valve, hoses, and passages checked for proper operation at the intervals specified. If the valve is plugged or sticking, replace with a new valve – **Do not attempt to clean the oil PCV valve!** Check ventilating hose for indication of damage or plugging with deposits. Replace if necessary.



802d4b6b

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Brake System

Power Disc Brakes (Front)
Disc brakes do not require adjustment; however, several hard stops during the break-in period are recommended to seat the linings and wear off any foreign material.

Brake Master Cylinders
The fluid level in the master cylinders should be checked whenever the vehicle is serviced, or immediately if the brake system warning light is on. If necessary, add fluid to bring level to the full mark on the side of the reservoir of the brake master cylinder. Be sure to clean the top of the master cylinder area before removing the cap. With disc brakes, fluid level can be expected to fall as the brake pads wear. Brake fluid level should be checked when pads are replaced. If the brake fluid level is abnormally low, check system for leaks.

Refer to Recommended Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts for correct fluid type.

WARNING!

Use of brake fluid that may have a lower initial boiling point, or is unidentified as to specifications, may result in sudden brake failure during hard prolonged braking. You could have an accident.

WARNING!

Overfilling the brake fluid reservoir can result in spilling brake fluid on hot engine parts and the brake fluid catching fire.

Use only brake fluid that has been in a tightly closed container to avoid contamination from foreign matter or moisture.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

CAUTION!

Do not allow a petroleum-base fluid to contaminate the brake fluid. Seal damage may result.

Brake Linings

Your vehicle is equipped with self-adjusting brakes. During normal driving, a few brake applications while moving in reverse will maintain your brakes at the specified adjustment. Adjustment will continue until the brake linings are worn. To avoid brake failure, brake pull or damage to the rotors or drums, inspect the brake linings as specified in the maintenance schedule. If excessively worn, the brake linings must be replaced.

Brake Hoses

Inspection should be performed whenever the brake system is serviced or at intervals specified. Inspect hydraulic brake hoses for surface cracking, scuffing or worn spots. If there is any evidence of cracking, scuffing, or worn spots, the hose should be replaced immediately! Eventual deterioration of the hose can take place with possible burst failure.

WARNING!

Worn brake hoses can burst and cause brake failure. You could have an accident. If you see any sign of cracking, scuffing, or worn spots, have the brake hoses replaced immediately.

Clutch Hydraulic System

The clutch hydraulic system is a sealed maintenance free system. In the event of leakage or other malfunction, the system must be replaced.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Manual Transmission

Fluid Level Check

This fluid should be checked whenever other underhood services are performed. The fluid level is checked by removing the fill plug. If the level of the lubricant is more than 1/4″ (6.35 mm) below the bottom of the filler hole while the vehicle is level, enough lubricant should be added to bring the level to the bottom of the filler hole. This fluid does not require periodic changing. However, if it becomes necessary to add or replace the fluid in these transmissions, refer to Recommended Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts for correct fluid type.

Automatic Transmission

Fluid Level Check

Check the fluid level while the transmission is at normal operating temperature 180°F (82°C). This occurs after at least 15 miles (24 km) of driving. At normal operating temperature the fluid cannot be held comfortably between the fingertips.

To check the automatic transmission fluid level properly, the following procedure must be used:

1. Operate the engine at idle speed and normal operating temperature.

2. The vehicle must be on level ground.

3. Fully apply the parking brake and press the brake pedal.

4. Place the gear selector momentarily in each gear position ending with the lever in P (Park).

5. Remove the dipstick, wipe it clean and reinsert it until seated.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

6. Remove the dipstick again and note the fluid level on both sides. The fluid level should be between the "HOT" (upper) reference holes on the dipstick at normal operating temperature. Verify that solid coating of oil is seen on both sides of the dipstick. If the fluid is low, add as required into the dipstick tube. **Do not overfill.** After adding any quantity of oil through the oil fill tube, wait a minimum of two (2) minutes for the oil to fully drain into the transmission before rechecking the fluid level.

NOTE: If it is necessary to check the transmission **below** the operating temperature, the fluid level should be between the two "COLD" (lower) holes on the dipstick with the fluid at approximately 70°F (21°C) (room temperature). If the fluid level is correctly established at room temperature, it should be between the "HOT" (upper) reference holes when the transmission reaches 180°F (82°C). Remember it is best to check the level at the normal operating temperature.

CAUTION!

Be aware that if the fluid temperature is below 50°F (10°C) it may not register on the dipstick. Do not add fluid until the temperature is elevated enough to produce an accurate reading.

7. Check for leaks. Release parking brake.

To prevent dirt and water from entering the transmission after checking or replenishing fluid, make certain that the dipstick cap is properly reseated. It is normal for the dipstick cap to spring back slightly from its fully seated position, as long as its seal remains engaged in the dipstick tube.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Automatic Transmission Fluid And Filter Change

To obtain best performance and long life for automatic transmissions, the manufacturer recommends that they be given regular maintenance service by an Authorized Dodge Dealer or Service Center. It is important that the transmission fluid be maintained at the correct level and that it be drained and refilled as specified.

Follow the proper Maintenance Schedule for your type of driving.

It is important that proper lubricant is used in the transmission. Refer to Recommended Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts for correct fluid type. It is important that the transmission fluid be maintained at the prescribed level using the recommended fluid.

CAUTION!

Using a transmission fluid other than the manufacturers recommended fluid may cause deterioration in transmission shift quality and/or torque converter shudder. Using a transmission fluid other than the manufacturers recommended fluid will result in more frequent fluid and filter changes. Refer to Recommended Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts for correct fluid type.

Special Additives

The manufacturer strongly recommends against the addition of any additives to the transmission. Exception to this policy is the use of special dyes to aid in detecting fluid leaks. The use of transmission sealers should be avoided, since they may adversely affect seals.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Transfer Case

Inspect the transfer case for fluid leaks. If a fluid leak is evident the transfer case fluid level may be low. Have the transfer case serviced immediately.

CAUTION!
Damage may result from operation of the vehicle with low transfer case fluid.

The transfer case fluid should be drained and refilled at the intervals specified.

Lubricant Selection

Refer to Recommended Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts for correct fluid type.

Axles

Refer to Recommended Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts for correct fluid type.

The manufacturer does not recommend regularly scheduled oil changes for axles in vehicles whose operation is classified as normal truck service.

NOTE: The presence of water in the gear lubricant will result in corrosion and possible failure of differential components. Operation of the vehicle in water, as may be encountered in some off-highway types of service, will require draining and refilling the axle to avoid damage.

Rear Axle

Rear Axle Limited-slip differentials require the use of Mopar limited-slip additive. Refer to Recommended Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts for correct fluid type. This should be added to the gear lubricant whenever a fluid change is made, when equipped with limited-slip

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

differential. Rear axle fluid level should be 1/4″ (6.35mm) below filler plug hole for 8 1/4″ axles and should be 5/8″ (16mm) below filler plug for 9 1/4″ axles.

Front Axle

Front Axle fluid level should be at the bottom of the fill plug.

Selection of Lubricating Grease

The National Lubricating Grease Institute (NLGI) has developed a symbol (Certification Mark) to aid the vehicle owner in the proper selection of grease for chassis components. This symbol, an example shown below, is located on the grease container and identifies the application and quality of the grease.

There are two groups identified, those for wheel bearings (Letter "G") and those for chassis (Letter "L") lubrication. Performance categories within these groups result in dual letter designations for each group. The letter designations shown in the example are the highest quality level available and when combined as shown can be used for chassis lubrication. Use only those greases that have the NLGI symbol on the container along with the proper quality level for your application.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Appearance Care and Protection from Corrosion

Protection of Body and Paint from Corrosion
Vehicle body care requirements vary according to geographic locations and usage. Chemicals that make roads passable in snow and ice, and those that are sprayed on trees and road surfaces during other seasons, are highly corrosive to the metal in your vehicle. Outside parking, which exposes your vehicle to airborne contaminants, road surfaces on which the vehicle is operated, extreme hot or cold weather and other extreme conditions will have an adverse effect on paint, metal trim, and underbody protection.

The following maintenance recommendations will enable you to obtain maximum benefit from the corrosion resistance built into your vehicle.

What Causes Corrosion?
Corrosion is the result of deterioration or removal of paint and protective coatings from your vehicle.

The most common causes are:

- Road salt, dirt and moisture accumulation.
- Stone and gravel impact.
- Insects, tree sap and tar.
- Salt in the air near seacoast localities.
- Atmospheric fallout/industrial pollutants.

Washing

- Wash your vehicle regularly. Always wash your vehicle in the shade using a mild car wash soap, and rinse the panels completely with clear water.
- If insects, tar or other similar deposits have accumulated on your vehicle, wash it as soon as possible.
- Use Mopar® auto polish to remove road film and stains and to polish your vehicle. Take care never to scratch the paint.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Avoid using abrasive compounds and power buffing that may diminish the gloss or thin out the paint finish.

CAUTION!

Do not use abrasive or strong cleaning materials such as steel wool or scouring powder, which will scratch metal and painted surfaces.

Special Care

- If you drive on salted or dusty roads or if you drive near the ocean, hose off the undercarriage at least once a month.
- It is important that the drain holes in the lower edges of the doors, rocker panels be kept clear and open.
- If you detect any stone chips or scratches in the paint, touch them up immediately. The cost of such repairs is considered the responsibility of the owner.
- If your vehicle is damaged due to an accident or similar cause which destroys the paint and protective coating have your vehicle repaired as soon as possible. The cost of such repairs is considered the responsibility of the owner.
- All wheels and wheel trim, especially aluminum and chrome plated wheels should be cleaned regularly with mild soap and water to prevent corrosion. To remove heavy soil, select a nonabrasive, non-acidic cleaner. Do not use scouring pads, steel wool, a bristle brush or metal polishes. Only Mopar® cleaners are recommended. Do not use oven cleaner. Avoid automatic car washes that use acidic solutions or harsh brushes that may damage the wheels' protective finish.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

- If you carry special cargo such as chemicals, fertilizers, de-icer salt, etc., be sure that such materials are well packaged and sealed.
- If a lot of driving is done on gravel roads, consider mud or stone shields behind each wheel.
- Use Mopar® touch up paint on scratches as soon as possible. Your dealer has touch up paint to match the color of your vehicle.

Interior Care

Use Mopar® Fabric Cleaner to clean fabric upholstery and carpeting.

Use Mopar® Vinyl Cleaner to clean vinyl upholstery and trim.

Mopar® Total Clean is specifically recommended for leather upholstery.

Your leather upholstery can be best preserved by regular cleaning with a damp soft cloth. Small particles of dirt can act as an abrasive and damage the leather upholstery and should be removed promptly with a damp cloth. Stubborn soils can be removed easily with a soft cloth and Mopar® Total Clean. Care should be taken to avoid soaking your leather upholstery with any liquid. Please do not use polishes, oils, cleaning fluids, solvents, detergents, or ammonia based cleaners to clean your leather upholstery. Application of a leather conditioner is not required to maintain the original condition.

WARNING!

Do not use volatile solvents for cleaning purposes. Many are potentially flammable, and if used in closed areas they may cause respiratory harm.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Glass Surfaces
All glass surfaces should be cleaned on a regular basis with any commercial household-type glass cleaner. Never use an abrasive type cleaner. Use caution when cleaning inside rear windows equipped with electric defrosters or windshields equipped with a windshield wiper de-icer. Do not use scrapers or other sharp instruments which may scratch the elements.

When cleaning the rear view mirror, spray cleaner on the towel or rag that you are using. Do not spray cleaner directly on the mirror.

Cleaning Plastic Instrument Cluster Lenses
The lenses in front of the instruments in this vehicle are molded in clear plastic. When cleaning the lenses, care must be taken to avoid scratching the plastic.

1. Clean with a wet soft rag. A mild soap solution may be used, but do not use high alcohol content or abrasive cleaners. If soap is used, wipe clean with a clean damp rag.
2. Dry with a soft tissue.

Seat Belt Maintenance
Do not bleach, dye or clean the belts with chemical solvents or abrasive cleaners. This will weaken the fabric. Sun damage will also weaken the fabric.

If the belts need cleaning, use a mild soap solution or lukewarm water. Do not remove the belts from the car to wash them.

Replace the belts if they appear frayed or worn or if the buckles do not work properly.

POWER DISTRIBUTION CENTER (FUSE/RELAY)

Your vehicle is equipped with an electrical power distribution center located on the left side of the engine compartment.

Thess power distribution centers house new plug-in "Maxi" fuses which replace all the in-line fusible links previously used. The power distribution centers also

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

contain "Mini"fuses and plug-in "ISO" relays. A label inside the latching cover of the Power Distribution Centers identifies each component for ease of replacement, if necessary. These fuses and relays can be obtained from your dealer.

CAUTION!

When replacing a blown fuse, it is important to use only a fuse having the correct amperage rating. The use of a fuse with a rating other than indicated may result in a dangerous electrical system overload. If a properly rated fuse continues to blow, it suggests a problem in the circuit that must be corrected.

NOTE: If you are leaving your vehicle dormant for longer than 21 days you may want to take steps to protect your battery. You may do this by disconnecting the battery or by disconnecting the two ignition-off draw (I.O.D.) fuses located in the Auxiliary Power Distribution Center (PDC) located in the engine compartment. The I.O.D. cavities include a snap-in retainer that allows the fuse to be disconnected, without removing it from the fuse block. Pressing the I.O.D. fuse back into the cavity reconnects it.

VEHICLE STORAGE

If you are storing your vehicle for more than 21 days, we recommend that you take the following steps to minimize the drain on your vehicle's battery:

- Disconnect the Ignition-Off Draw fuse (I.O.D.) fuse located in the Power Distribution Center (PDC). The I.O.D. cavity includes a snap-in retainer that allows the fuse to be disconnected, without removing it from the fuse block.
- The transfer case should be placed in the 4HI mode and kept in this position to minimize the battery drain.
- As an alternative to the above steps you may disconnect the negative cable from the battery.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

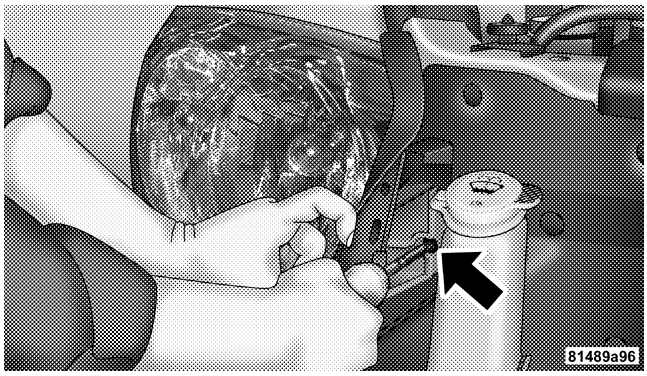
REPLACEMENT LIGHT BULBS

LIGHT BULBS — Interior	Bulb No.
Dome Light	WL212–2
Cargo Light	567
Overhead Console Lights	192
Reading Light	WL212–2

LIGHT BULBS — Outside	Bulb No.
Headlight	H13
Front Park/Turn/Sidemarker	3157NA
Back-Up	3157
Center High Mounted Stoplight	921
Fog Lamp	9145
Rear Sidemarker	168
License Plate Light	168
Rear Tail, Stop, Turn Signal	3057

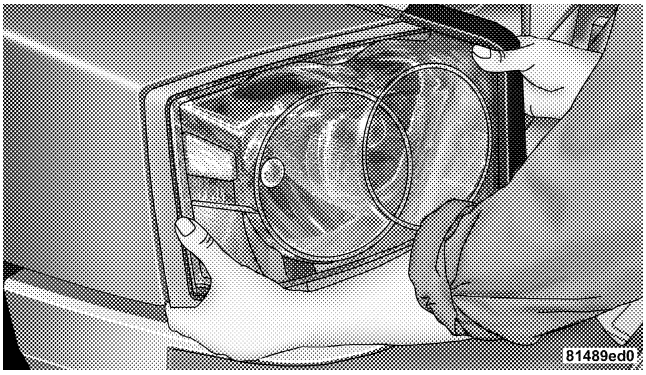
BULB REPLACEMENT

Headlamps

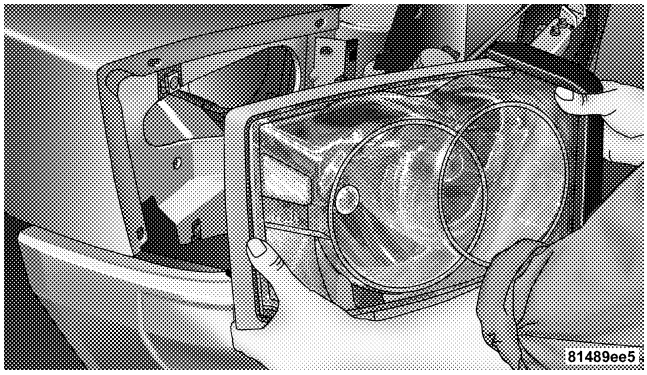


Removing Attaching Screw

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Removing Headlamp Assembly



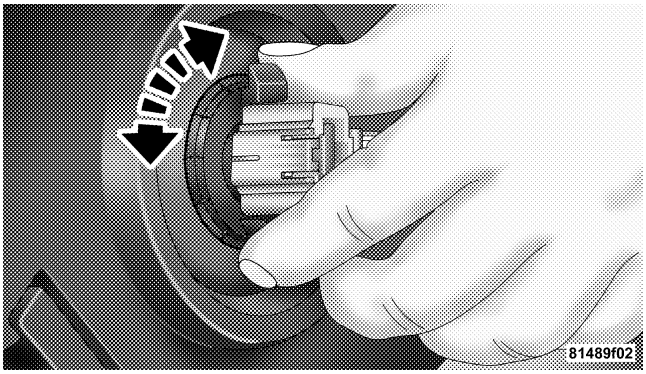
Removing Headlamp Assembly

1. Open the hood.
2. Remove the 3 screws attaching the headlamp housing to the inner panel.
3. Grasp the headlamp and pull firmly to disengage the headlamp housing from the fender panel.

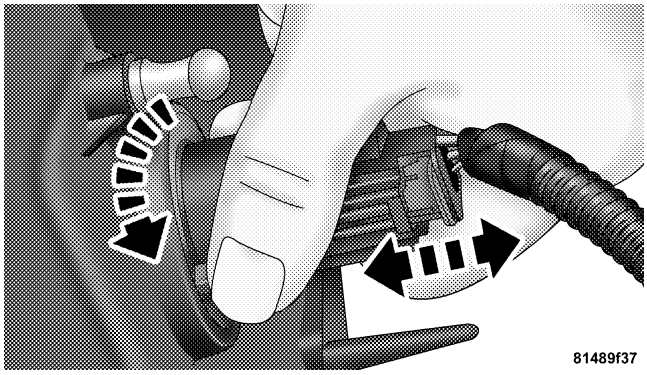
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

4. While firmly holding the headlamp housing in your hands unlock and disconnect Headlamp bulb connector.

5. Twist 1/4 turn and remove Headlamp bulb from housing and replace.



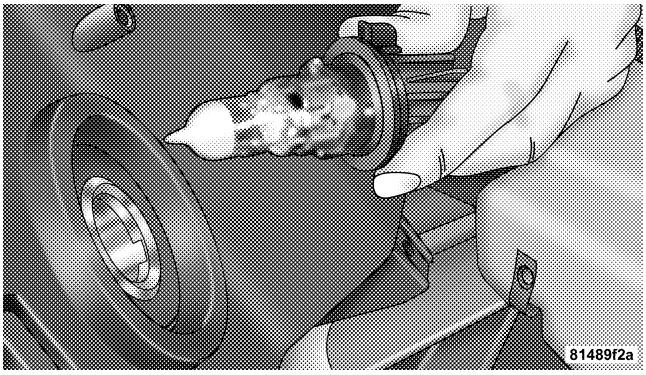
Removing Headlamp Bulb



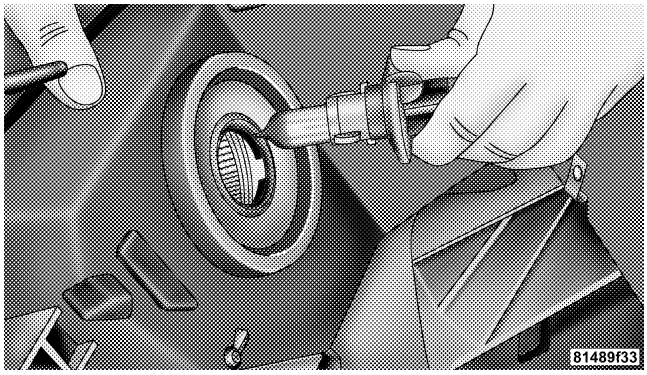
Unlocking Connector

6. Twist 1/4 turn and remove bulb and socket from housing, pull bulb straight out from socket and replace.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

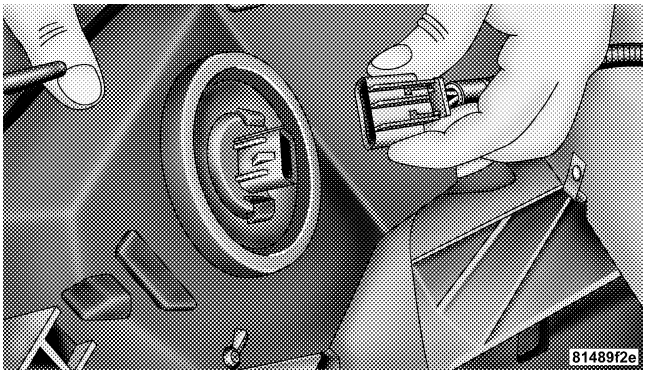


Removing Headlamp from Assembly



Removing Headlamp Bulb

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Disconnecting Headlamp Bulb Connector

7. Reverse procedure to install new Headlamp bulb into the headlamp assembly.

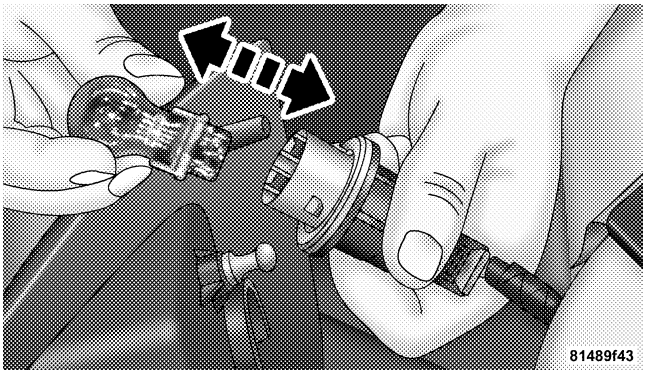
NOTE: These are Halogen bulbs. Take care not to touch the bulb with your fingers. Body oils from your fingers could cause excessive heat buildup which reduces bulb life.

Front Park and Turn Signal Lamp.

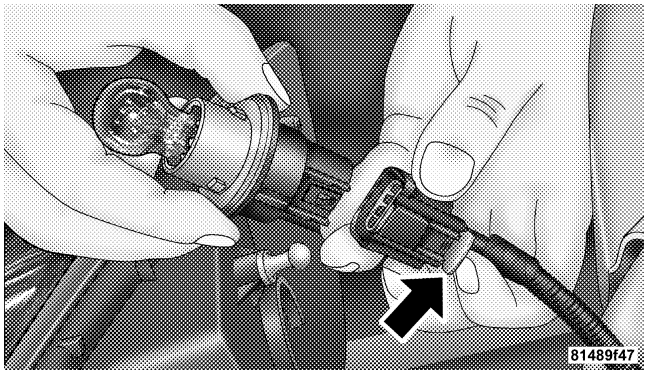
- Open the hood.
- Remove the (3) screws attaching the headlamp housing to the inner panel.
- Grasp the headlamp and pull firmly to disengage the headlamp housing from the fender panel.

NOTE: It is not necessary to disconnect the connector to replace this bulb. If the bulb socket needs replacement disconnect the connector.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS



Removing Turn Signal Bulb



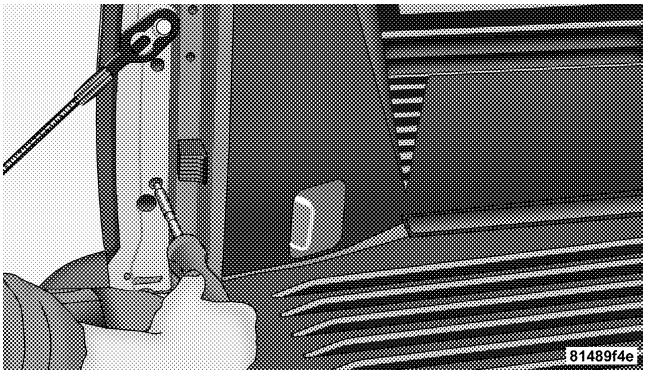
Disconnecting Turn Signal Connector

- Rotate bulb socket 1/4 turn and remove socket from housing.
- Pull bulb straight from socket.
- Reverse procedure to install new turn signal bulb.

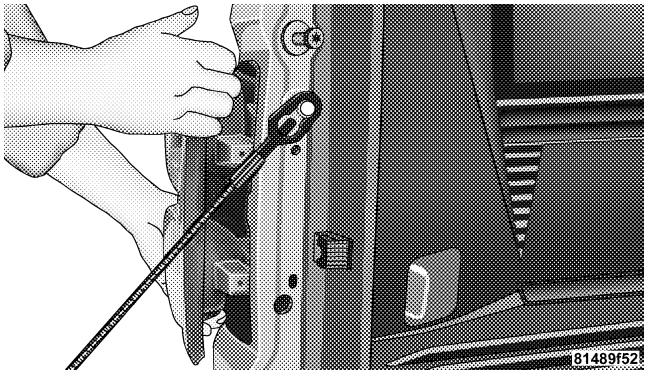
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Rear Side Marker, Taillamps/Stoplamp, and Turn Signal Bulbs — Replacement

1. Remove the two (2) screws that pass through the bed sheetmetal.



Removing the Two (2) Screws

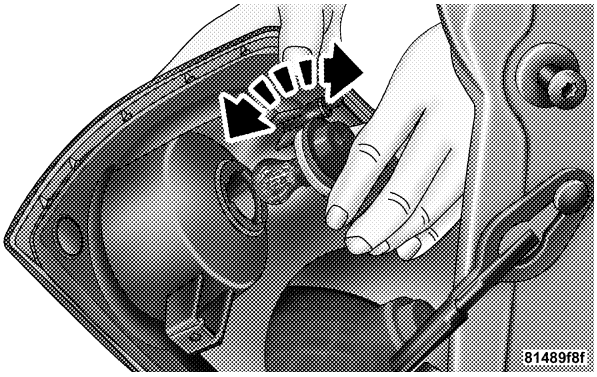


Pulling Housing From Body

2. Pull the taillamp housing straight out from the body.

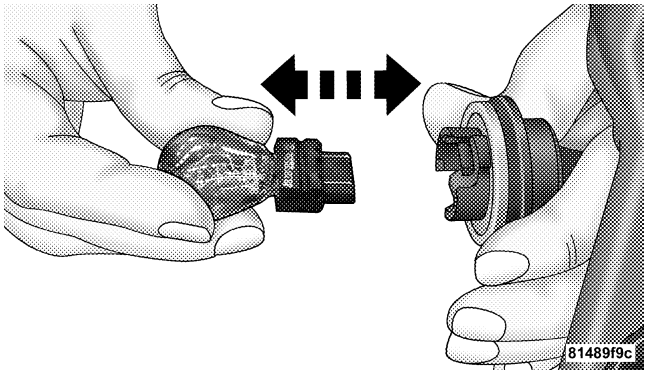
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Rotate the bulb socket from the housing.



Rotating Bulb Socket From Housing

4. Pull bulb straight out of socket.



Pulling Bulb From Socket

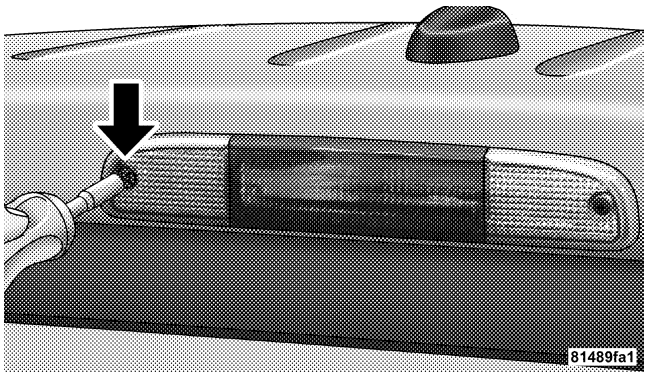
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

5. Reverse Procedure to install bulb and housing. Place the two raised blocks passed the body.

Sliding Raised Blocks Past Body

Center High-Mounted Stoplamp And Cargo Lamp

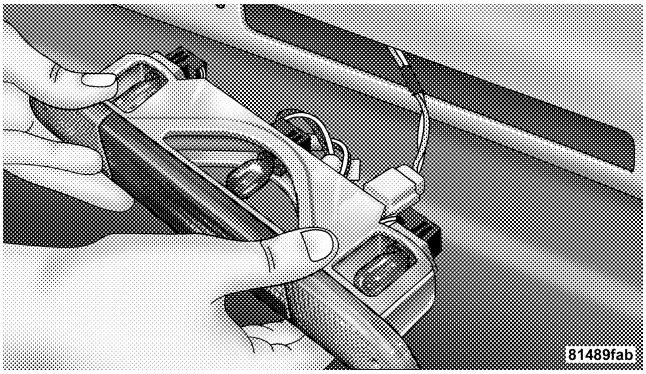
1. Remove the two (2) screws holding the housing/lens to the body as shown.



Removing Screws

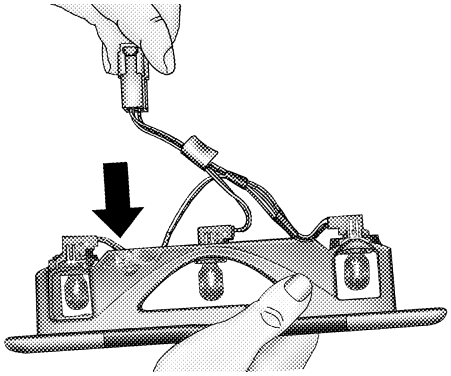
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Remove housing from Cab.



Removing Housing from Cab

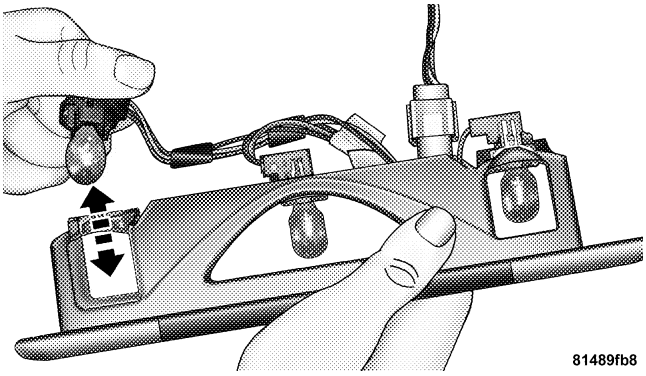
3. Remove connector from housing tab for more clearance.



Removing Connector from Tab

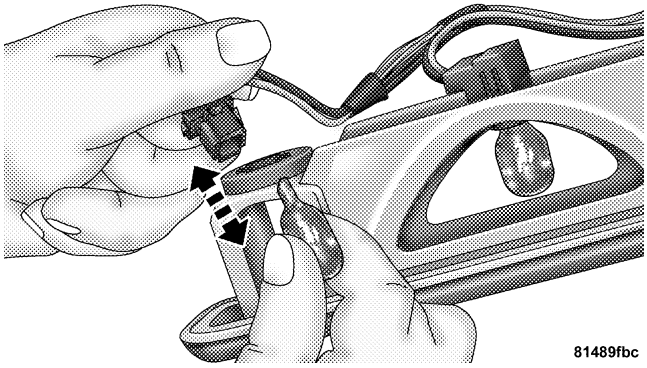
Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

4. Turn desired bulb socket ¼ turn and remove socket and bulb from housing.



Removing Socket From Housing

5. Pull desired bulb straight from the socket.



Pulling Bulb From Socket

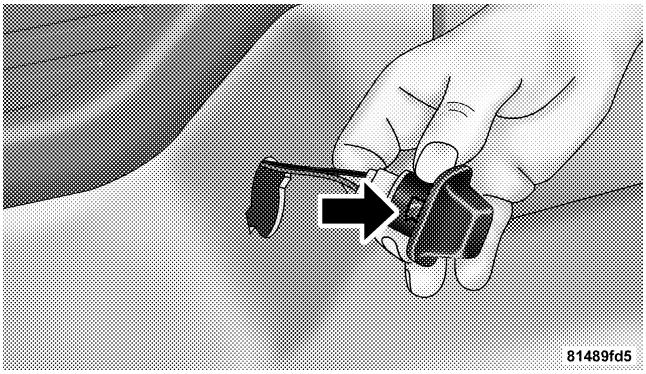
- Outside Bulbs: Cargo Lamps
- Inside Bulb: Center High Mount Stop Lamp

6. Reverse procedure for installation of bulbs and housing.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

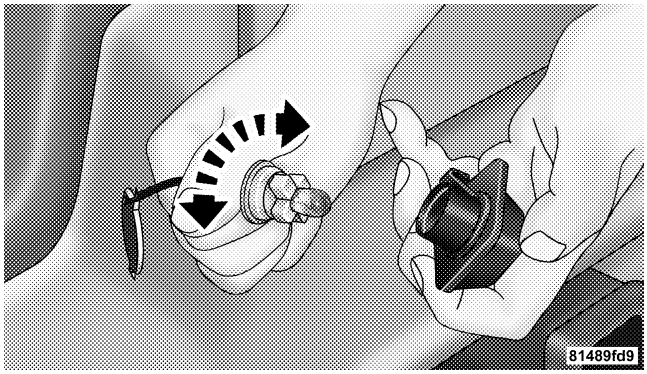
License Lamps

1. Using a screw driver pry black rubber housing from the bumper.



Removing Housing From Bumper

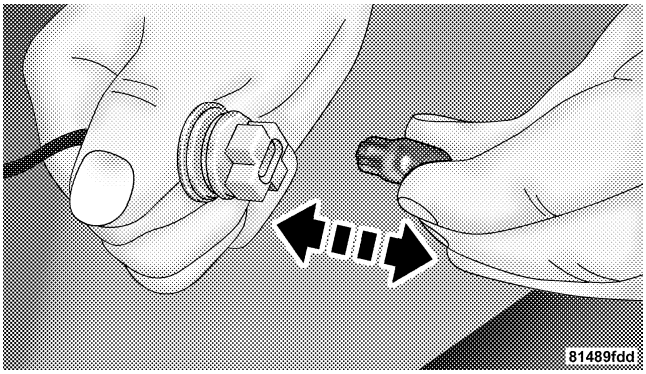
2. Rotate the socket 1/4 turn counterclockwise.



Rotating Socket

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Pull bulb from socket.



Pulling Bulb From Socket

4. Reverse procedure for installation.

Fog Lamps

1. Disconnect connector from fog lamp by raising wire harness lock tab and pulling on wire harness connector.

2. Rotate fog lamp bulb 1/4 turn counterclockwise and pull to remove from fog lamp housing.

3. Reverse Procedure to install.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

FLUIDS AND CAPACITIES

	U.S.	Metric
Fuel		
3.7L/4.7L, 87 Octane	22 Gal.	83L
4.7L HO, 91 Octane, Recommended Not Required	22 Gal	83L
Engine Oil (with filter)		
3.7L, SAE 5W-30, API Certified	5 Qt.	4.7L
4.7L, SAE 5W-30, API Certified	6 Qt.	5.7L
4.7L HO, SAE 5W-30, API Certified	6 Qt.	5.7L
Cooling System (includes 2.1 Qts./2L for coolant bottle		
3.7L (Mopar® Antifreeze/Coolant 5 Year/100,000 Mile Formula)	13.3 Qt.	12.5L
4.7L (Mopar® Antifreeze/Coolant 5 Year/100,000 Mile Formula)	13.3 Qt.	12.5L
4.7L HO (Mopar® Antifreeze/Coolant 5 Year/100,000 Mile Formula)	13.3 Qt.	12.5L

NOTE: All fluid capacities are approximate capacities.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

RECOMMENDED FLUIDS, LUBRICANTS AND GENUINE PARTS

Engine

Component	Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts
Engine Coolant	Mopar® Antifreeze/Coolant 5 Year/100,000 Mile Formula HOAT (Hybrid Organic Additive Technology) P/N 5011764AB or equivalent.
Engine Oil	Use SAE 5W-30, API Certified, meeting material standard MS-6395.
Engine Oil Filter	Mopar® Engine Oil Filter, P/N 5281090 or equivalent.
Spark Plugs	Refer to the Vehicle Emission Control Information label in the engine compartment.
Fuel Selection 3.7L/4.7L	87 Octane, (R+M)/2 Method
Fuel Selection 4.7L HO	91 Octane, (R+M)/2 Method (Recommend, Not Required.)

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Chassis

Component	Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts.
Automatic Transmission	Mopar® ATF+4, Automatic Transmission Fluid.
Manual Transmission (Getrag 238)	Mopar® ATF+4, Automatic Transmission Fluid.
Transfer Case	Mopar® ATF+4, Automatic Transmission Fluid.
Front Axle	SAE 75W-90 Multipurpose Type, GL-5 Gear Lubricant (MS9763).
Rear Axle	SAE 75W-140 Synthetic Gear Lubricant (MS-8985). Limited-slip rear axles require Mopar® limited-slip additive (MS-10111). Four ounces (118 ml) should be added to the gear lubricant whenever a fluid change is made.
Brake Master Cylinder	Mopar® DOT 3 and SAE J1703 should be used. If DOT 3 brake fluid is not available, then DOT 4 is acceptable. Use only recommended brake fluids.
Power Steering Reservoir	Mopar® ATF+4, Automatic Transmission Fluid.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

MAINTENANCE SCHEDULES

CONTENTS

■ Emission Control System Maintenance 348
■ Emissions Testing 348
■ Maintenance Schedules 349
□ Schedule “B” 352
□ Schedule “A” 362

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM MAINTENANCE

The "Scheduled" maintenance services, listed in **bold type** on the following pages must be done at the times or mileages specified to assure the continued proper functioning of the emission control system. These, and all other maintenance services included in this manual, should be done to provide best vehicle performance and reliability. More frequent maintenance may be needed for vehicles in severe operating conditions such as dusty areas and very short trip driving.

Inspection and service also should be done any time a malfunction is suspected.

NOTE: Maintenance, replacement, or repair of the emission control devices and systems on your vehicle may be performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual using any automotive part which has been certified pursuant to U.S. EPA or, in the State of California, California Air Resources Board regulations.

EMISSIONS TESTING

In some localities, it may be or will become a legal requirement to ensure that all emissions components and systems are functioning properly as a part of the test procedure. The test center accomplishes this by checking the On Board Diagnostic System (OBD) system with an electronic scan tool. If your vehicle has recently been serviced, the OBD system may have been reset to a "not ready" condition because the OBD system has not had sufficient time since the servicing to reconfirm that emissions components are operating properly. In most cases, a reasonable mix and amount of normal city and highway driving and at least one overnight-off period will be required to prepare your vehicle for this check; however your dealer has the equipment and procedures required to make certain that the OBD system of your vehicle is ready for the required testing.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

MAINTENANCE SCHEDULES

There are two maintenance schedules that show the **required** service for your vehicle.

First is Schedule **"B"**. It is for vehicles that are operated under the conditions that are listed below and at the beginning of the schedule.

- Day or night temperatures are below 32° F (0° C).
- Stop and go driving.
- Extensive engine idling.
- Driving in dusty conditions.
- Short trips of less than 10 miles (16 km).
- More than 50% of your driving is at sustained high speeds during hot weather, above 90° F (32° C).
- Trailer towing.
- Taxi, police, or delivery service (commercial service).
- Off-road or desert operation.
- **If equipped for and operating with E-85 (ethanol) fuel.**

NOTE: If **ANY** of these apply to you then change your engine oil every 3,000 miles (5 000 km) or 3 months, whichever comes first and follow schedule "B" of the ″Maintenance Schedules″ section of this manual.

NOTE: If **ANY** of these apply to you then change your coolant every 102,000 miles (163 000 km) or 60 months, whichever comes first and follow schedule "B" of the ″Maintenance Schedules″ section of this manual.

NOTE: Most vehicles are operated under the conditions listed for Schedule ″B″.

Second is Schedule **"A"**. It is for vehicles that are not operated under any of the conditions listed under Schedule ″B″.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Use the schedule that best describes your driving conditions. Where time and mileage are listed, follow the interval that occurs first.

NOTE: Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 6000 miles (10 000 km) or 6 months whichever comes first.

CAUTION!
Failure to perform the required maintenance items may result in damage to the vehicle.

At Each Stop for Fuel

- Check the engine oil level about 5 minutes after a fully warmed engine is shut off. Checking the oil level while the vehicle is on level ground will improve the accuracy of the oil level reading. Add oil only when the level is at or below the ADD or MIN mark.
- Check the windshield washer solvent and add if required.

Once a Month

- Check tire pressure and look for unusual wear or damage.
- Inspect the battery and clean and tighten the terminals as required.
- Check the fluid levels of coolant reservoir, brake master cylinder, and transmission and add as needed.
- Check all lights and all other electrical items for correct operation.

At Each Oil Change

- Change the engine oil filter.
- Inspect the exhaust system.
- Inspect the brake hoses.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

- Inspect the CV joints (if equipped) and front suspension components.
- Check the automatic transmission fluid level (if equipped).
- Check the manual transission fluid level (if equipped).
- Check the coolant level, hoses, and clamps.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Schedule "B"

Follow schedule "B" if you usually operate your vehicle under one or more of the following conditions.

- Day or night temperatures are below 32° F (0° C).
- Stop and go driving.
- Extensive engine idling.
- Driving in dusty conditions.
- Short trips of less than 10 miles (16 km).
- More than 50% of your driving is at sustained high speeds during hot weather, above 90° F (32° C).
- Trailer towing.
- Taxi, police, or delivery service (commercial service).
- Off-road or desert operation.
- **If equipped for and operating with E-85 (ethanol) fuel.**

NOTE: If **ANY** of these apply to you then change your engine oil every 3,000 miles (5 000 km) or 3 months, whichever comes first and follow schedule "B" of the "Maintenance Schedules" section of this manual.

NOTE: If **ANY** of these apply to you then change your coolant every 102,000 miles (163 000 km) or 60 months, whichever comes first and follow schedule "B" of the "Maintenance Schedules" section of this manual.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Miles (Kilometers)	**3,000 (5 000)**	**6,000 (10 000)**	**9,000 (14 000)**	**12,000 (19 000)**	**15,000 (24 000)**
Change engine oil and engine oil filter, or at 3 months whichever comes first.	X	X	X	X	X
Rotate tires.		X		X	
Change rear axle fluid.					X
Change front axle fluid (4X4).					X
Inspect engine air cleaner filter, replace if necessary.					X

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Miles (Kilometers)	**18,000 (29 000)**	**21,000 (34 000)**	**24,000 (38 000)**	**27,000 (43 000)**	**30,000 (48 000)**
Change engine oil and engine oil filter, or at 3 months whichever comes first.	X	X	X	X	X
Rotate tires.	X		X		X
Change rear axle fluid.					X
Change front axle fluid (4X4).					X
Check transfer case fluid level (4X4).					X
Inspect brake linings.	X				
Inspect engine air cleaner filter, replace if necessary.					X
Replace spark plugs.					X
Inspect PCV valve, replace as necessary.**					X

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Miles (Kilometers)	**33,000 (53 000)**	**36,000 (58 000)**	**39, 000 (62 000)**	**42,000 (67 000)**	**45,000 (72 000)**
Change engine oil and engine oil filter, or at 3 months whichever comes first.	X	X	X	X	X
Rotate tires.		X		X	
Change rear axle fluid.					X
Change front axle fluid (4X4).					X
Inspect brake linings.		X			
Inspect engine air cleaner filter, replace if necessary.					X

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Miles (Kilometers)	**48,000 (77 000)**	**51,000 (82 000)**	**54,000 (86 000)**	**57,000 (91 000)**	**60,000 (96 000)**
Change engine oil and engine oil filter, or at 3 months whichever comes first.	X	X	X	X	X
Rotate tires.	X		X		X
Change rear axle fluid.					X
Change front axle fluid (4X4).					X
Inspect brake linings.			X		
Inspect engine air cleaner filter, replace if necessary.					X
Replace spark plugs.					X
Inspect PCV valve, replace as necessary.**					X
Inspect auto tension drive belt and replace if required.					X
Drain and refill automatic transmission fluid, change filter (3.7L).					X
Drain and refill automatic transmission fluid and change main sump filter (4.7L).					X
Inspect transfer case fluid (4X4).					X
Flush and replace engine coolant at 60 months, or 102, 000 miles (163 000 km) whichever comes first.					X

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Miles (Kilometers)	**63,000 (101 000)**	**66,000 (106 000)**	**69,000 (110 000)**	**72,000 (115 000)**	**75,000 (120 000)**
Change engine oil and engine oil filter, or at 3 months whichever comes first.	X	X	X	X	
Rotate tires.		X		X	
Change rear axle fluid.					X
Change front axle fluid (4X4).					X
Inspect brake linings.				X	
Inspect engine air cleaner filter, replace if necessary.					X
Inspect auto tension drive belt and replace if required.					X

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Miles (Kilometers)	**78,000 (125 000)**	**81,000 (130 000)**	**84,000 (134 000)**	**87,000 (139 000)**	**90,000 (144 000)**
Change engine oil and engine oil filter, or at 3 months whichever comes first.	X	X	X	X	X
Rotate tires.	X		X		X
Change rear axle fluid.					X
Change front axle fluid (4X4).					X
Check transfer case fluid level (4X4).					X
Inspect brake linings.					X
Inspect engine air cleaner filter, replace if necessary.					X
Replace spark plugs.					X
Inspect PCV valve, replace as necessary.**					X
Inspect auto tension drive belt and replace if required.					X

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Miles (Kilometers)	**93,000 (149 000)**	**96,000 (154 000)**	**99,000 (158 000)**	**100,000 (160 000)**	**102,000 (163 000)**
Change engine oil and engine oil filter, or at 3 months whichever comes first.	X	X	X		X
Rotate tires.		X			X
Flush and replace engine coolant, if not done at 60 months.					X
Change rear axle fluid.		X			
Change front axle fluid (4X4).		X			

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Miles (Kilometers)	**105,000 (168 000)**	**108,000 (173 000)**	**111,000 (178 000)**	**114,000 (182 000)**	**117,000 (187 000)**	**120,000 (192 000)**
Change engine oil and engine oil filter, or at 3 months whichever comes first.	X	X	X	X	X	X
Rotate tires.		X		X		X
Change rear axle fluid.	X					X
Change front axle fluid (4X4).	X					X
Inspect brake linings.		X				
Inspect engine air cleaner filter, replace if necessary.	X					X
Replace spark plugs.						X
Inspect PCV valve, replace as necessary.**						X
Inspect auto tension drive belt and replace if required.	X					X
Drain and refill transfer case fluid (4X4).						X
Drain and refill automatic transmission fluid, change filter (3.7L).						X

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Miles (Kilometers)	105,000 (168 000)	108,000 (173 000)	111,000 (178 000)	114,000 (182 000)	117,000 (187 000)	120,000 (192 000)
Drain and refill automatic transmission fluid and change main sump filter and spin-on cooler return filter if equipped. (4.7L).						X
Flush and replace engine coolant, if not replaced at 102,000 miles (163 000 km).						X

This applies only if your vehicle is used for police, taxi, fleet, or frequent trailer towing.

Inspection and service should also be performed anytime a malfunction is observed or suspected. Retain all receipts.

** This maintenance is recommended by the manufacturer to the owner, but not required to maintain the emissions warranty.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Schedule "A"

Miles (Kilometers) [Months]	**6,000 (10 000) [6]**	**12,000 (19 000) [12]**	**18,000 (29 000) [18]**	**24,000 (38 000) [24]**	**30,000 (48 000) [30]**
Change engine oil and engine oil filter.	X	X	X	X	X
Rotate tires.	X	X	X	X	X
Check transfer case fluid level (4X4).					X
Inspect brake linings.			X		
Inspect engine air cleaner filter, replace as necessary.					X
Replace spark plugs.					X

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Miles (Kilometers) [Months]	**36,000 (58 000) [36]**	**42,000 (67 000) [42]**	**48,000 (77 000) [48]**	**54000 (84 000) [54]**	**60,000 (96 000) [60]**	**66,000 (106 000) [66]**
Change engine oil and engine oil filter.	X	X	X	X	X	X
Rotate tires.	X	X	X	X	X	X
Check transfer case fluid level (4X4).					X	
Flush and replace engine coolant at 60 months, if not replaced at 102,000 miles (163 000 km).					X	
Inspect brake linings.	X			X		
Inspect engine air cleaner filter, replace if necessary.					X	
Replace spark plugs.					X	
Inspect PCV valve, replace as necessary.**					X	
Inspect auto tension drive belt and replace if required.					X	

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

Miles (Kilometers) [Months]	**72,000 (115 000) [72]**	**78,000 (125 000) [78]**	**84,000 (134 000) [84]**	**90,000 (144 000) [90]**	**96,000 (154 000) [96]**	**100,000 (160 000)**
Change engine oil and engine oil filter.	X	X	X	X	X	
Rotate tires.	X	X	X	X	X	X
Check transfer case fluid level (4X4).				X		
Inspect brake linings.	X			X		
Inspect engine air cleaner filter, replace if necessary.				X		
Replace spark plugs.				X		
Inspect PCV valve, replace as necessary.**				X		
Inspect auto tension drive belt and replace if required.				X		

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Miles (Kilometers) [Months]	**102,000 (163 000) [102]**	**108,000 (173 000) [108]**	**114,000 (182 000) [114]**	**120,000 (192 000) [120]**
Change engine oil and engine oil filter.	X	X	X	X
Rotate tires.	X	X	X	X
Drain and refill tranfer case fluid (4X4).				X
Flush and replace engine coolant, if not done at 60 months.	X			
Flush and replace engine coolant, if not done at 102,000 miles (163 000 km)				X
Inspect brake linings.		X		
Inspect engine air cleaner filter, replace as necessary.				X
Replace spark plugs.				X
Inspect PCV valve, replace as necessary.**				X

** This maintenance is recommended by the manufacturer to the owner, but not required to maintain the emissions warranty.

Inspection and service should also be performed anytime a malfunction is observed or suspected. Retain all receipts.

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING!

You can be badly injured working on or around a motor vehicle. Do only that service work for which you have the knowledge and the right equipment. If you have any doubt about your ability to perform a service job, take your vehicle to a competent mechanic.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

IF YOU NEED CONSUMER ASSISTANCE

CONTENTS

- Suggestions For Obtaining Service For Your Vehicle 368
  - Prepare For The Appointment 368
  - Prepare A List 368
  - Be Reasonable With Requests 368
- If You Need Assistance 368
- Warranty Information (U.S. Vehicles Only) 370
- Mopar® Parts 372
- Reporting Safety Defects 372
  - In Canada 372
- Publication Order Forms 373

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

SUGGESTIONS FOR OBTAINING SERVICE FOR YOUR VEHICLE

Prepare For The Appointment

If you're having warranty work done, be sure to have the right papers with you. Take your warranty folder. All work to be performed may not be covered by the warranty, discuss additional charges with the service manager. Keep a maintenance log of your vehicle's service history. This can often provide a clue to the current problem.

Prepare A List

Make a written list of your vehicle's problems or the specific work you want done. If you've had an accident, or work done that is not on your maintenance log, let the service advisor know.

Be Reasonable With Requests

If you list a number of items, and you must have your vehicle by the end of the day, discuss the situation with the service advisor and list the items in order of priority. At many dealers you may obtain a rental vehicle at a minimal daily charge. If you need a rental, it is advisable to make these arrangements when you call for an appointment.

IF YOU NEED ASSISTANCE

The manufacturer and its dealers are vitally interested in your satisfaction. We want you to be happy with our products and services.

Warranty service must be done by an authorized Chrysler, Dodge, or Jeep dealer. We strongly recommend that you take your vehicle to you selling dealer. They know you and your vehicle best, and are most concerned that you get prompt and high quality service. The manufacturer's dealers have the facilities, factory-trained technicians, special tools, and the latest information to assure your vehicle is fixed correctly and in a timely manner.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

This is why you should always talk to your dealer's service manager first. Most matters can be resolved with this process.

- If for some reason you are still not satisfied, talk to the general manager or owner of the dealership. They want to know if you need assistance.
- If your dealership is unable to resolve the concern, you may contact the Manufacturer's Customer Center.

Any communication to the Manufacturer's Customer Center should include the following information:

- Owner's name and address
- Owner's telephone number (home and office)
- Dealership name
- Vehicle identification number
- Vehicle delivery date and mileage

DaimlerChrysler Motors Corporation Customer Center
P.O. Box 21–8004
Auburn Hills, MI 48321–8004
Phone: (800) 992-1997

DaimlerChrysler Canada Inc. Customer Center
P.O. Box 1621
Windsor, Ontario N9A 4H6
Phone —(800) 465–2001

In Mexico contact:
Av. Prolongacion Paseo de la Reforma, 1240
Sante Fe C.P. 05109
Mexico, D. F.
In Mexico (915) 729–1248 or 729–1240
Outside Mexico (525) 729–1248 or 729–1240

Customer Assistance For The Hearing Or Speech Impaired (TDD/TTY)
To assist customers who have hearing difficulties, the manufacturer has installed special TDD (Telecommunication Devices for the Deaf) equipment at its Customer

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Center. Any hearing or speech impaired customer who has access to a TDD or a conventional teletypewriter (TTY) in the United States can communicate with the manufacturer by dialing 1–800–380–CHRY.

Service Contract

You may have purchased a service contract for your vehicle to help protect you from the high cost of unexpected repairs after your manufacturer's new vehicle limited warranty expires. The manufacturer stands behind only the manufacturer's Service Contracts. If you purchased a manufacturer's Service Contract, you will receive Plan Provisions and an Owner Identification Card in the mail within three weeks of your vehicle delivery date. If you have any questions about your service contract, call the manufacturer's Service Contract National Customer Hotline at 1-800-521-9922.

The manufacturer will not stand behind any service contract that is not the manufacturer's Service Contract. It is not responsible for any service contract other than the manufacturer's Service Contract. If you purchased a service contract that is not a manufacturer's Service Contract, and you require service after your manufacturer's new vehicle limited warranty expires, please refer to your contract documents, and contact the person listed in those documents.

We appreciate that you have made a major investment when you purchased your new vehicle. Your dealer has also made a major investment in facilities, tools, and training to assure that you are absolutely delighted with your ownership experience. You'll be pleased with their sincere efforts to resolve any warranty issues or related concerns.

WARRANTY INFORMATION (U.S. Vehicles Only)

See your manufacturer's Warranty Information Booklet for information on warranty coverage and transfer of warranty.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

DESCRIPTION	1 Yr/ 12,000	2 Yr/ 24,000	3 Yr/ 36,000	3 Yr/ 50,000	3 Yr/ Unlmtd	5 Yr/ 100,000	7 Yr/ 70,000	8 Yr/ 80,000
Basic Limited Warranty Coverage	■	■	■					
Special Extended Warranty Coverage								
Powertrain Limited Warranty: ($100 deductible)	■	■	■	1st Owner & 2nd Owner with Paid Powertrain Transfer				
	2nd Owner if Powertrain Not Transferred and 3rd (and After) Owners							
Anti-Corrosion Perforation Limited Warranty: All Panels	■	■	■	■	■			
Outer Panels	■	■	■	■	■	■		
Federal Emission Warranty:	■	■						
Federal Emission Warranty - Specified Components	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	■
California Emission Warranty:	■	■	■	■				
California Emission Warranty - Specified Components	■	■	■	■	■	■	■	

NOTE: Vehicles used as a police vehicle, taxi, limousine, postal delivery vehicle, ambulance or rental vehicle are covered only under the 3 year/36,000 mile Basic Limited Warranty.

8132e27a

U.S. Vehicles Only

9

Information Provided by: DEALER E-PROCESS

MOPAR® PARTS

Mopar® fluids, lubricants, parts, and accessories are available from your dealer. They will help you keep your vehicle operating at its best.

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS

In the 50 United States and Washington D.C.: If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying the manufacturer.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, and the manufacturer.

To contact NHTSA, you may either call the Auto Safety Hotline toll free at 1-800-424-9393 (or 366-0123 in Washington DC area) or write to: NHTSA, U.S. Dept. of Transportation, Washington DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from the Hotline.

In Canada:

If you believe that your vehicle has a safety defect, you should contact the Customer Service Department immediately. Canadian customers who wish to report a safety defect to the Canadian government should write to Transport Canada, Motor Vehicle Defect Investigations and Recalls, 2780 Sheffield Road, Ottawa, Ontario K1B 3V9.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

PUBLICATION ORDER FORMS

To order the following manuals, you may use either the website or the phone numbers listed below. Visa, Mastercard, American Express, and Discover orders are accepted. If you prefer mailing your payment, please call for an order form.

NOTE: A street address is required when ordering manuals. (No P.O. Boxes).

- *Service Manuals.*

  These comprehensive service manuals provide the information that students and professional technicians need in diagnosing/troubleshooting, problem solving, maintaining, servicing and repairing DaimlerChrysler Corporation vehicles. A complete working knowledge of the vehicle, system and/or components is written in straightforward language with illustrations, diagrams and charts.

- *Diagnostic Procedure Manuals.*

  Filled with diagrams, charts and detailed illustrations, these practical manuals make it easy for students and technicians to find and fix problems on computer-controlled vehicle systems and features. They show exactly how to find and correct problems the first time, using step-by-step troubleshooting and driveability procedures, proven diagnostic tests and a complete list of all tools and equipment.

- *Owner's Manuals.*

  These manuals have been prepared with the assistance of service and engineering specialists to acquaint you with specific Chrysler group vehicles. Included are starting, operating, emergency and maintenance procedures as well as specifications, capabilities and safety tips.

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Call Toll Free at:

- **1–800–890–4038 (U.S.)**
- **1–800–387–1143 (Canada)**

Or

Visit us on the World Wide Web at:

- **www.techauthority.daimlerchrysler.com**
- **www.daimlerchrysler.ca/manuals**

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

INDEX

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Adding Fuel 247,273
Air Cleaner, Engine (Engine Air Cleaner Filter) . . . 303
Air Conditioner Maintenance 307
Air Conditioning 185
Air Conditioning, Operating Tips 185,188
Air Conditioning Refrigerant 307,308
Air Conditioning System 185,307
Air Filter 303
Air Pressure, Tires 234,241
Airbag 41,55,158
Airbag Light 54
Airbag On/Off Switch 55
Alarm 27,154
Alarm, Panic 24
Alignment and Balance 241
Alterations/Modifications, Vehicle 6
Antenna, Satellite Radio 181
Antifreeze (Engine Coolant) 313,314,343
Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) 221,222
Anti-Lock Warning Light 155
Anti-Theft System 27,154
Appearance Care 325
Arming Theft System 27
Auto Unlock, Doors 18
Automatic Dimming Mirror 82
Automatic Door Locks 18
Automatic Transaxle 199
Automatic Transmission 196,199,320
  Adding Fluid 321
  Fluid and Filter Changes 322
  Fluid Level Check 320
  Fluid Type 322,345
  Gear Ranges 199
  Special Additives 322
  Torque Converter 203
Axle Fluid 345
Axle Lubrication 323

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Ball Joints 309
Battery 306
Charging 283
Emergency Starting 283
Gas Caution 283
Keyless Transmitter Replacement 26
Saving Feature (Protection) 115
Belts, Drive 302
Belts, Seat 32
Body Mechanism Lubrication 309
B-Pillar Location 229
Brake Fluid 345
Brake System 221,318
Anti-Lock 221,222
Disc Brakes 318
Fluid Check 318
Hoses 319
Master Cylinder 318
Parking 219
Warning Light 155,157
Brake/Transmission Interlock 199
Break-In Recommendations, New Vehicle 72
Bulb Replacement 330
Bulbs, Light 330

Calibration, Compass 131
Camper 144
Capacities, Fluid 343
Caps, Filler
Oil (Engine) 301
Power Steering 308
Car Washes 325
Carbon Monoxide Warning 145,250
Cargo Light 118
Cargo (Vehicle Loading) 252
Catalytic Converter 251,304
CD Player 161,166
Cellular Phone 84,184

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Center High Mounted Stop Light 338
Center Seat Storage Compartment 142
Certification Label 252
Changing A Flat Tire 274
Charging 283
Chart, Tire Sizing 226
Child Restraint 59,61
Child Restraint Tether Anchors 62,67
Child Restraint with Automatic Belts 38
Child Seat 64
Circuit Breakers 328
Climate Control 184
Clock 160
Compact Disc Maintenance 183
Compact Spare Tire 237
Compass 131
Compass Calibration 131
Compass Variance 132
Computer, Trip/Travel 127
Console, Floor 141
Console, Overhead 126
Contract, Service 370
Converter, Catalytic 251
Coolant 315
Coolant Pressure Cap 315
Cooling System 312
  Adding Coolant (Antifreeze) 314
  Coolant Capacity 343
  Coolant Level 315
  Disposal of Used Coolant 313
  Drain, Flush, and Refill 313
  Inspection 312
  Points to Remember 316
  Radiator Cap 315
  Selection of Coolant 313,343,344
  Temperature Gauge 152
Cruise Control (Speed Control) 123
Cup Holder 143

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Customer Assistance 368

Data Recorder, Event 57
Daytime Running Lights 117
Dealer Service 297
Defroster, Rear Window 191
Defroster, Windshield 74,186
Delay (Intermittent) Wipers 120
Diagnostic System, Onboard 294
Differential, Limited-Slip 218
Dimmer Switch, Headlight 153
Dipsticks
  Automatic Transmission 320
  Oil (Engine) 298
  Power Steering 308
Disarming, Theft System 28
Disc Brakes 318
Disposal
  Used Coolant 313
Door Ajar Light 156
Door Locks 16
Door Opener, Garage 133
Drive Belts 302
Drive Shaft Universal Joints 309

Electric Remote Mirrors 83
Electrical Power Outlets 139
Electronic Speed Control 123
Emergency, In Case of
  Freeing Vehicle When Stuck 224
  Jacking 278
  Overheating 315
  Tow Hooks 286
  Towing 287
Emission Control System Maintenance 348
Emission Related Components 316
Engine
  Air Cleaner 303

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Block Heater 198
Break-In Recommendations 72
Compartment 293
Coolant (Antifreeze) 313,344
Cooling 312
Exhaust Gas Caution 73,250
Fails to Start 197
Flooded, Starting 197
Fuel Requirements 343
Jump Starting 283
Oil 298,343,344
Oil Filler Cap 301
Oil Selection 343
Oil Synthetic 301
Overheating 315
Starting 196
Temperature Gauge 152
Entry System, Illuminated 15
Equipment Identification Plate 269
Ethylene Glycol Antifreeze 313
Event Data Recorder 57
Exhaust Gas Caution 73,250,312
Exhaust System 73,311
Extender, Seat Belt 40
Exterior Lighting 116

Filters
Air Cleaner 303
Engine Fuel 304
Engine Oil 302,344
Engine Oil Disposal 302
Flashers
Hazard Warning 272
Turn Signal 118,152,336
Flat Tire Stowage 283
Flooded Engine Starting 197
Floor Console 141
Fluid, Brake 345

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fluid Capacities 343
Fluid Level Checks
Automatic Transmission 320
Brake 318
Cooling System 312
Engine Oil 298
Power Steering 308
Transfer Case 323
Fog Lights 117,342
Four Wheel Drive 206
Operation 206
Four-Way Hazard Flasher 272
Freeing A Stuck Vehicle 224
Front Axle 324
Fuel 245
Adding 247
Filter 304
Gauge 152
Octane Rating 245,344
Requirements 245,343
Tank Capacity 343
Fueling 247
Fuses 328

Garage Door Opener 133
Gas Cap 248,295
Gas Gauge (Fuel Gauge) 152
Gasoline 245
Gasoline, Reformulated 246
Gauges
Coolant Temperature 152
Fuel 152
Odometer 155,156
Speedometer 154
Tachometer 155
Gear Ranges 199
Glass Cleaning 328
Grease 324

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Gross Axle Weight Rating 253
Gross Cargo Weight 252
GVWR 253,255

Hands-Free Phone 84
Hazard Warning Flasher 272
Headlights 330
  High Beam 119
  High Beam/Low Beam Select Switch 119
  Lights On Reminder 117
  Passing 119
  Replacing 330
  Switch 116
Heated Mirrors 84
Heated Seats 112
Heater, Engine Block 198
High Beam Indicator 153
High Beam/Low Beam Select (Dimmer) Switch . . 119
Hitches
  Trailer Towing 259
Holder, Cup 143
Homelink Transmitter 133
Hood Release 112
Hoses 316

Ignition 13
  Key 10,13
  Lock 13
Illuminated Entry 15
Infant Restraint 59
Inflation Pressure Tires 241
Inside Rearview Mirror 81
Instrument Cluster 152
Instrument Panel and Controls 150
Instrument Panel Lens Cleaning 328
Interior Appearance Care 327
Interior Lights 114

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Intermittent Wipers 120
Introduction 4

Jack Operation 274,278
Jacking Instructions 279

Key, Replacement 12
Key, Sentry 11
Key-In Reminder 10
Keyless Entry System 21
Keys 10
Knee Bolster 41

Lane Change and Turn Signals 118,152,336
Lap/Shoulder Belts 32
LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tether for CHildren) . 62
Lights 74,114
  Airbag 54,158
  Anti-Lock Warning 155
Back-Up 336
Brake Warning 157
Bulb Replacement 330
Cargo 118
Center Mounted Stop 338
Courtesy/Reading 127
Cruise 158
Daytime Running 117
Door Ajar 156
Fog 117,153,342
Hazard Warning Flasher 272
Headlights 116
High Beam 119
High Beam/Low Beam Select 119
Instrument Cluster 152
Intensity Control 115
Interior 114,127
License 341
Lights On Reminder 117

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Low Fuel 152,153
Malfunction Indicator 157
Passing 119
Seat Belt Reminder 153
Service 330
Turn Signal 118,336
Warning (Instrument Cluster Description) 152
Washer Fluid 157
Limited-Slip Differential 218
Loading Vehicle 252
Tires 229
Locks 16
Auto Unlock 18
Automatic Door 18
Child Protection 20
Door 16
Ignition 13
Keys 10
Power Door 17
Steering Wheel 13
Lower Anchors and Tether for CHildren (LATCH) . 62
Lubricating Oil 324
Lubrication, Body 309
Lug Nuts 282
Lumbar Support 109

Maintenance Free Battery 306
Maintenance Procedures 298
Maintenance Schedule 349
Schedule "A" 362
Schedule "B" 352
Malfunction Indicator Light 157,295
Manual, Service 373
Manual Transmission 196,204,320
Fluid Level Check 320
Lubricant Selection 320,345
Map/Reading Lights 127
Mirrors 81

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Automatic Dimming 82
Electric Powered 83
Heated 84
Outside 82
Rearview 81
Modifications/Alterations, Vehicle 6
Mopar Parts 297,372
Multi-Function Control Lever 118

New Vehicle Break-In Period 72

Occupant Classification System 45
Occupant Restraints 31
Octane Rating, Gasoline 245
Oil, Engine 298,344
Capacity 343
Change Interval 299
Dipstick 298
Disposal 302
Filter 302,344
Filter Disposal 302
Identification Logo 301
Materials Added to 302
Recommendation 300,343
Synthetic 301
Viscosity 301,343
Onboard Diagnostic System 294,295
Opener, Garage Door 133
Outside Rearview Mirrors 82
Overdrive 155,201
Overdrive OFF Switch 201
Overhead Console 126,127
Overhead Travel Information Center 127
Overheating, Engine 154,315
Owner's Manual 373

Panic Alarm 24
Parking Brake 219

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Parking On Hill 219
Passenger Airbag On/Off Switch 55
Passing Light 119
Pets 72
Pets, Transporting 72
Phone, Cellular 84
Phone, Hands-Free 84
Placard, Tire and Loading Information 230
Positive Crankcase Valve 317
Power
  Brakes 318
  Distribution Center 328
  Door Locks 15,17
  Mirrors 83
  Outlet 139
  Steering 223,308
  Windows 29
Power Steering Fluid 345
Pregnant Women and Seat Belts 40
Preparation for Jacking 279
Pretensioners
  Seat Belts 38
Programmable Electronic Features 134,138
Programming Transmitters 25,134,138

Quad Cab 112

Radial Ply Tires 236
Radiator Cap (Coolant Pressure Cap) 315
Radio Broadcast Signals 159
Radio Operation 161,166,184
Radio Reception 159
Radio, Satellite 178
Radio (Sound Systems) 161,166
Rear Axle 323
Rear Window 31
Rear Window Defroster 191
Rearview Mirrors 81

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Reception, Radio 159
Reclining Front Seats 108
Recommended Fluids, Lubricants and Genuine Parts 344
Recorder, Event Data 57
Recreational Towing 264
Shifting into Transfer Case Neutral (N) 265
Shifting out of Transfer Case Neutral (N) 267
Reformulated Gasoline 246
Refrigerant 308
Release, Hood 112
Reminder, Seat Belt 39
Remote Keyless Entry 21
Remote Sound System Controls 182
Replacement Keys 12
Replacement Parts 297
Replacement Tires 240
Reporting Safety Defects 372
Restraints, Child 59,64
Restraints, Occupant 31
Rocking Vehicle When Stuck 224
Rotation, Tires 244

Safety Checks Inside Vehicle 74
Safety Checks Outside Vehicle 74
Safety Defects, Reporting 372
Safety Information, Tire 224
Safety Tips 73
Satellite Radio 178
Satellite Radio Antenna 181
Schedule, Maintenance 349
Seat Belt Maintenance 328
Seat Belt Reminder 39
Seat Belts 31,32
And Pregnant Women 40
Child Restraint 59,61
Extender 40
Front Seat 32

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Inspection 74
Pretensioners 38
Reminder 153
Seats 107
Adjustment 107
Heated 112
Lumbar Support 109
Reclining 108
Security Alarm (Theft Alarm) 27,154
Selection of Coolant 344
Selection of Oil 300
Sentry Key 11
Sentry Key Programming 12
Service and Maintenance 298,348,349
Service Assistance 368
Service Contract 370
Service Manuals 373
Setting the Clock 160
Shift Speeds 205
Shifting
Automatic Transmission 199
Manual Transmission 204
Transfer Case 206
Transfer Case, Shifting into Transfer Case Neutral (N) 265
Transfer Case, Shifting out of Transfer Case Neutral (N) 267
Shoulder Belt Upper Anchorage 37
Shoulder Belts 32
Signals, Turn 118,152,336
Snow Chains (Tire Chains) 242
Snow Plow 263
Snow Tires 243
Spare Tire 237,238,276
Spark Plugs 303
Speed Control 123
Speedometer 154
Starting 196

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Emergency (Jump Starting) 283
Engine Block Heater 198
Steering
Column Controls 118
Column Lock 13
Power 223,308
Wheel, Tilt 122
Steering Wheel Mounted Sound System Controls 182
Storage Compartment, Center Seat 142
Storage, Vehicle 329
Stuck, Freeing 224
Supplemental Tire Pressure Information 241
Synthetic Engine Oil 301

Tachometer 155
Tailgate 143
Taillights 336
Temperature Gauge, Engine Coolant 152
Tether Anchor, Child Restraint 62
Theft System Arming 27
Theft System Disarming 28
Thermostat 316
Tilt Steering Column 122
Tire and Loading Information Placard 229,230,241
Tire Identification Number (TIN) 228
Tire Markings 224
Tire Safety Information 224
Tires 74,233
Air Pressure 233
Alignment 241
Chains 242
Changing 274
Compact Spare 237
General Information 233
High Speed 236
Inflation Pressures 234
Jacking 278

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Load Capacity 229,230
Radial 236
Replacement 240
Rotation 244
Safety 224,233
Sizes 226
Snow Tires 243
Spare Tire 276
Spinning 238
Tread Wear Indicators 239
Wheel Mounting 278
Wheel Nut Torque 282
Tongue Weight/Trailer Weight 258
Torque Converter Clutch 203
Tow Hooks, Emergency 286
Towing 256
Disabled Vehicle 287
Guide 260
Recreational 264
Weight 260
Traction 269
Trailer Towing 256
Cooling System Tips 262
Hitches 259
Minimum Requirements 260
Trailer and Tongue Weight 258
Wiring 261
Trailer Towing Guide 260
Trailer Weight 260
Transaxle 199
Automatic 199
Operation 199
Transfer Case 323
Fluid 345
Transmission 199,320
Automatic 196,199,320
Filter 322
Fluid 320,322,345

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Maintenance 320
Manual 196,204,320
Shifting 205
Transmitter Battery Service 26
Transmitter, Garage Door Opener 133
Transmitter Programming 25
Tread Wear Indicators 239
Trip Computer 127
Trip Odometer 155
Trip Odometer Reset Button 159
Turn Signals 118,152,336

Universal Transmitter 133
Unlock, Auto 18

Vacuum/Vapor Harnesses 316
Variance, Compass 132
Vehicle Identification Number 5
Vehicle Loading 230,252
Vehicle Modifications/Alterations 6
Vehicle Storage 329

Warning Lights (Instrument Cluster Description) . 152
Warnings and Cautions 5
Warranty Information 370
Washers, Windshield 121
Washing Vehicle 325
Weight Load Carrying 252
Wheel Alignment and Balance 241
Wheel and Wheel Trim 326
Wheel Changing 274
Wheel Mounting 278
Wheel Nut Torque 282
Wind Buffeting 31
Window Fogging 188
Windows 29
Power 29
Windshield Defroster 74,186

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS

Windshield Washers 120,121,310
Fluid 120,310
Windshield Wiper Blades 310
Windshield Wipers 120
Wiper Blade Replacement 310
Wipers, Intermittent 120
Wrecker Towing 287

Information Provided by:
DEALER E-PROCESS